A Critical Sail

into

Ali A. M. Yeddi's Novel

The Legendary Whale

Dr. Abdelrahman M. Yeddi Elnoor

A Critical Sail

into

Ali A. M. Yeddi's Novel

The Legendary Whale

Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor

Boons of God upon humans are many,

however, the best of all

is the cuteness of the offsprings.

Copyright © Dr. Abdelrahman M. Yeddi Elnoor: 2024
© No.: IPR Record/20241215368766/31/2024 (Copyright Office-IPD, MOCI, Doha-Qatar)

First edition: April 2024
Edited edition 2025

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any means, electronic, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright holder.

Contents

	P. No.
Introduction	vii
Ali A. M. Yeddi: A Short Biography	**1**
• Ali's Birth and Early Education	1
• Ali's High Talent and Intellectual Tendencies	2
• Ali's Love for English Language	3
• Ali's Aesthetic Vision as Manifested in Early Artistic Works	4
• Ali's Literary Achievements and Philosophical Vision	6
An Interview with the Author of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**11**
Chapter-wise Summary of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**16**
The Genre of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**32**
Plot Structure of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**37**
The Narrative Technique of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**83**
The Unnamed Narrator: The Main Mouthpiece of the Novelist	**118**
The Setting, Images and Symbols in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'	**125**
• The Sea: Symbolic Dimensions	128
• Tylo Frip: Symbolic Dimensions	134
• Jim Fritz: Symbolic Significance	137
• Obsession with Taking Revenge	139
• Jim's Dream	140
• The Confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip	142

- Murder of Fagin and his Dead Body 143
- Death of Jim 144
- Ships 147
- Boats 148
- The Whirlpool 149
- The Box of Gold Coins 149
- The Floating Wood 151

Similes in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' 152

The Role of Pencil Illustrations in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' 159

Characterization in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' 164

- The Major Human Character 166
 - Jim Fritz: A Case of Obsession with Revenge 166
- The Non-Human Character 193
 - Tylo Frip: The True Hero of the Novel 193
- Other Characters 203
 - Rosa 203
 - Sikes 205
 - Morgan Tarner 208
 - Systen 211
 - Sapt 213
 - Boxtel 215
 - Fagin 218
 - Taigo 221
 - Robert 222
 - Shomo 222
 - George 223
 - Bill 223

Revenge as a Major Theme of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' **225**
Religious and Superstitious Remarks and Commercial Interests in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' **246**
Irrationalism vs Wisdom in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' **249**
Didactic and Moral Elements in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' **255**
Death, Violence and Horror in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale' **264**
The Opening and the Closing Chapters **269**
Significance, Aptness and Suitability of the Title: 'The Legendary Whale' **273**
Index **284**
- Specimens of Ali's Childhood Artistic Inclinations 284

In the name of Allah; the Most Gracious and the Most Merciful
and PBU His Prophet and the Purged Progeny

Introduction

Allah's will (be done)! There is no power But with Allah, the Almighty, Praise be to Allah, the Cherisher and the Sustainer of the Worlds, and PBU the Prophet Mohammed and his purged progeny.

Dear reader: Critics can say a lot about this wonderful and virgin novel; 'The Legendary Whale'. It is Ali's magnum opus which was produced early in his life; when he was only 14 years old. The novel shows that the budding novelist was well-acquainted with not only the details about fishing, whaling and working minds and psychology of those who work in fishing and whaling industry, but also the psychology and physiology of whales. Like a professional fisherman and whaler, the novelist wrote a novel which, creatively and artistically, gives informative details of not only the behavior of fish and whales, but also of a whole industry that still exists in our modern life and, negatively, affecting human life. He clothed these rich and useful informative details in an expressive artistic and literary clothing that resulted in producing this wonderful novel.

The novel is still virgin; in the sense that it had not yet been handled by critics and researchers. Its legendary character; Tylo Frip, the revenge-ridden Jim and other details ingrained in the novel will continue to be accommodating to rich interpretations by successive generations of readers, researchers and critics in future. It will also remain a source of intellectual thinking for those who want to do some justice to nature and its valuable resources and fight against reckless

human behaviors towards nature and its treasures. As an academic writer and critic, I may also try to say something substantial about the novel to provide a base for other researchers to work on shredding the novel into different dimensions of critical studies. In fact, there are many topics which are ingrained within the novel that await critical studies. Within its layers of meaning, the novel includes many modern visions which a human being needs to understand so as he may be able to take himself out of the environmental problems in which he has engulfed himself. Those visions, which are ingrained in the texts of the novel, need efficient literary evaluators who have sharp critical acumens, intelligent critical faculties and deep intellectual skills to probe them and present them so as to enrich the critical circles, support teachers of literary criticism and develop the critical skills of students. In this book titled "A Critical Sail into Ali A. M. Yeddi's Novel 'The Legendary Whale'", I have taken the initiative and tried to pave the way for a critical handling of the novel. I have provided some critical frames of the novel and tried to play on the strings of the critical faculty of researchers to pave the way for a major critical handling of the novel 'The Legendary Whale'.

The virtuosic and bravura writing of 'The Legendary Whale' is a pleasure to read and enjoy. It entertains and educates. It means that it has didactic dimensions that aim to reform human relations with nature. Ali uses English language, effectively, as a means of adding excitement and clarity to his adventurous novel. His ability to use simple English language to set tone and mood of the situation brings the reader closer to characters, surrounding settings and scenes and dramatic events of the novel. Therefore, I recommend turning the novel into a film because the settings and events of the novel allow it to be adapted for the production of an entertaining and educative film. It will be as attractive

as those sea adventures which have been turned into films. Moreover, the novel is also useful for students in school and university level because Ali employs functional English in the literary text to teach functional English. Therefore, as an educator and specialist in teaching English language, in addition of being a critic, I strongly recommend that the novel should be used as a literary text in school level so as to improve students' language, introduce them to the literary work of a person who was in their age when he wrote it and make them enthusiastic to learn this wonderful language through enjoying a literary work of a young man. The content of the novel and its chapterization help to accomplish this educative task. In this regard, it is important to remember that the division of the novel into short titled-chapters makes it suitable to be used as a text in schools as the chapters fit the time allotted for class-periods. It serves the purpose of introducing students to the course of the progress of the novel without demanding much time in the class. It enables teachers and students to have a close reading of a chapter or two and derive the purpose behind reading the text; whether it was for enjoyment, language or any other critical purpose. In fact, the novel is one of those literary treasures which students of high schools should read, enjoy and learn from. Such an academic, linguistic and literary persuasion will make many students realize that it is possible for them to be writers in English language even if they are studying in Arabic medium schools. It needs only some positive attitudes, motivations and hardworking which has targets.

Being the father of the novelist, I did not depend only on the text of the novel, but also on the accumulated information which I derived from following and observing my son's life, growing and his intellectual and artistic gains. This is clearly manifested in the first chapter titled: 'Ali A. M. Yeddi: A Short Biography.' I have

interviewed him to extract more information and support the critical sail with direct statements from the novelist himself. I am sure that critics can have different critical studies and views that are based on different modes of analysis. However, I hope that this literary study plays on the critical string of the critical faculty of researchers and provides them with the critical frames that enable them to go deep between the lines of the novel, probe its texts and produce what has not come to my mind. This will definitely enrich the critical circles and qualify students and researchers who pursue their literary studies and aspire to become efficient and full-fledged critics. In this regard, this critical sail into the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' along with my critical evaluation of Tayeb Salih's 'Season of Migration to the North' are useful as they may provide students of literature some basic critical terminologies that may help them to form critical frames for the literary works they read in future and produce distinct critical studies. Needless to add, I am solely responsible for the errors and imperfections that still remain in this critical sail. I promise the reader that I will exert all efforts to edit and refine the texts of the book in its next editions if I am alive.

Finally, I supplicate to Allah; the Almighty, the way I always used to supplicate, by saying, "Oh Allah, do not make the world our main concern nor the end of our knowledge and nor our destiny to Hell."

Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor, 2024

Ali A. M. Yeddi: A Short Biography

Being the father of the novelist: Ali Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor, I will try to give a brief account of some aspects that may present a short biography about him.

Ali's Birth and Early Education

The novelist: Ali Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor, the author of the novel titled: 'The Legendary Whale', subject of this critical sail, was born in Sudan on 31st. of January 2007. He is the elder son of Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor who was, at then, working as the main legal translator in Judiciary Department in Abu Dhabi. When Ali was three years old, he was enrolled in 'Noh's Ark English medium Kindergarten' (KG) in Abu Dhabi. By the age of five, he was enrolled in the first-standard in 'Al Khartoum International School'; Arabic medium Basic school, due to the return of his father to Sudan. When he was seven years old; in 2014, he joined 3rd. standard in 'Sudanese School', Doha, Qatar, as his father has been recruited as Expert of Translation in the Department of Intellectual Property, Ministry of Commerce and Industry, Doha, Qatar. Now, Ali is in 'Khalifa Secondary School', 12th. Standard, and he is preparing to appear for the final exams that will qualify him for university studies.

Ali's High Talent and Intellectual Tendencies

Ali has always been a talented person and rather a prodigy since his early childhood. He has displayed early signs of extraordinary cognitive abilities and captivated his parents' and teachers' attention since his childhood. His parents realized that he was not ordinary like other young boys of his age. He was exceptional and rather phenomenal in his intellectual abilities. Throughout his Basic schooling, he was a disciplined student and adored by his teachers. He was the top of his class without any competitor. Since his childhood, he has been very bookish and in a deep love to general reading and drawing natural scenes. He was insisting on attending the annual bookfairs in Doha to select reading material such as novels, stories, history of world politics, encyclopedias and other titles about nature's life on land, in seas and oceans. He was not contented with only knowing information typical to that of the young boys of his age, rather, he was deeply engrossed in material related to various topics. He absorbed abundant knowledge at a pace which was phenomenal; indeed. Consequently, he became a cultured young talent who was always distinct as far as general knowledge and drawing natural sceneries are concerned. His conversation always featured ideas that are seldom in the vocabulary of those of his age. In addition to reading a lot of literary and political works and going through many encyclopedias about nature on land or in seas and oceans, he started reading about the world wars; the first and the second world wars as well as the Russian-Ukraine

war. Despite being young, he was having a lot of knowledge about these wars. His deep knowledge about world wars made him in love with drawing fighter jets of different shapes and models; old and modern. He has his own political views about world's affairs. He is an anti-Nazi, an anti-Zionist, anti-imperialist and a strong supporter of Russia, specially, after he realized that, both, Hitler and Zelensky are Nazis with Zionist backgrounds and therefore he considered them to be behind the suffering of millions not only in Ukraine, but also in Europe and the world. He made an expressive drawing, as presented in the index, to depict his position in this regard. He resents the pro-Zionist rulers in the Arab world, admires the Iranian Revolutionary Guard and says that if he were an Iranian, he would join it as it produced heroes like Sulaimani.

Ali's Love for English Language

Ali is a lover of English language. Being a person who lives in Arabic speaking society, he devotes a lot of time to improve his English language skills. One of the best series of reading comprehension in English language which he liked and completed was 'Stories of the World' by Safia Iqbal. When his father takes the family to India, he collects the courses of English language taught in non-English medium schools in India and reads them all; from the first cover to the last cover. Therefore, his skill in English language got developed. He has acquired the ability to think in English language since his early boyhood

though he has been studying in Arabic medium schools. Hence, Ali's skill in thinking in English language, his ability to organize his language and his rich artistic imagination enabled him to write in English language at an early age.

Ali's Aesthetic Vision as Manifested in Early Artistic Works

Ali's aesthetic vision and philosophy of life started manifesting themselves through his love for nature that has been projected in his nature's paintings in which he took care of the details that depict various aspects of nature in such a way that revealed him as a lover, a guardian and a defender of nature. Though his eyes were opened to cities landscapes with their sky-scrappers and modern infrastructures in cities on the Persian Gulf; Abu Dhabi, Doha, etc., he was a lover of nature and a keen observer of the behavior of animals. Since his early childhood, he has been undergoing an intensive attachment to nature. In his own room in modern cities in which he lived, he made use of modern media such TV and internet to watch and experience a variety of nature's settings and consequently he internalized them within his aesthetic structure and got influenced by them. He was a lover of the TV programs and channels that give information about nature whether on land or in seas and oceans. He was in love with watching films about sea-animals in various oceans including the north and south arctic oceans and land-animal in Africa, north America, Latin America, South America, Asia, South-east Asia, Australia. All these have been reflected in

his drawing and writing talent. A close examining of his paintings shows the interest of the novelist in nature and its treasures. He has many drawings which depict nature in its instinctive action, reveal his aesthetic structure and reflect his crave for nature in general. The amount of observation of nature which he has acquired through attending TV programs and reading books and encyclopedias about nature made his nature-talent richer than even of those who actually live in actual natural-setting. He possessed a keen observing and penetrating mentality that picks up the minute and exceptional details of nature and natural setting in a better way than those who actually live in rural setting or sea-side areas. These minute and exceptional details which he incorporates in his drawings right from early stages of his childhood captivated everyone who saw his drawings despite the simple drawing tools which he was using. Therefore, Ali has been a good drawer of nature and natural scenes. He accomplished many works of art when he was not more than thirteen years old. His drawing skills continued to improve rapidly to produce many marvelous, vivid and active natural scenes that depict the nature-in-action. They are the outcome of the material which he watches or reads. This was only a prelude of a high intellect which started unfolding itself as he was growing. Specimens which reflect Ali's early artistic inclinations and political attitude are included in the index of this critical sail just to show some samples of his early drawings that reflect his love for nature and political knowledge. They may

facilitate the process of understanding Ali's budding literary and artistic philosophy and intellectual vision. Moreover, being an artist, he supplemented the text of the novel with simple pencil illustrations. They added to the artistic and literary value of the novel as it will be discussed later on.

Ali's Literary Achievements and Philosophical Vision

Ali authored his first novel in English; 'The Legendary Whale' when he was only 14 years old. At then, he was studying in 10$^{th.}$ Standard class. Consequently, he became one of the youngest novelists in the world. It is a great, fresh and wonderful work of imagination that sprang out from a young and fresh intellect. The novel indicates that the novelist knowledge about fishing and whaling is rich despite he had never gone for a whaling or fishing voyage. In fact, the story is not only a literary work, but also it can be treated as a brief whaling manual that gives a lot of factual information about whaling and fishing. The omniscient or unnamed narrator says, "the crew stabbed its chest flippers and tail to make it swim slowly and weakly. A man stabbed one of the arteries of the tail. It began to bleed profusely." He adds, "The men tied the whale along the timber bar of the ship." Such details indicate that the novelist was well-acquainted with the details of sea-life, the physiology of the fish and whales and the knowledge of fishing and whaling.

The novel offers insight into the culture of whaling, human relations in such a business and whaling industry that is

concerned, solely, with business without any bothering about human life, nature or its tressures. In whaling industry, the whalers and fishermen, as well, are helpless gears in the machine of fishing and whaling industry which employs them mercilessly and exploits them cruelly. The death of any fisherman or whaler does not make any other person shed a single tear for him. The dead fisherman or whaler is not more than any squid or tuna that succeeded in freeing itself from the hooks or the nets and disappeared into the depth of the sea. Therefore, nobody was sorry for the death of Systen or Darnay. Nobody was sorry for the death of Sikes except his father; Jim and his mother; Rosa. The novel depicts the quality of people who are employed in fishing and whaling industry. Many sailors were pushed to fight Tylo Frip. In attempting to do so, they died and nobody bothered about them except Fagin who himself was victimized by Jim. Some sailors were ready to risk their lives just to get gold-coins. This gives a grim picture of the materialistic nature of man who was ready to make himself a gear in the machine of the reckless questor for revenge. Thus, the novel helps in building reader's perception about the grim condition of laborers when any economic activity turns into a kind of industry that serves the pockets, whims and ulterior motives of the egocentric traders even if those whims and motives were destructive and fatal in nature.

The novel is more than just a chronicle of Jim's life, experience or quest for confronting Tylo Frip and killing it. It

projects the philosophy of the novelist who presented a prophecy of human tragedy and fate if he chooses to continue harming nature. This philosophical vision made the novelist an environmentalist who exerted his effort to protect nature through an expressive artistic way. The novel can be seen as part of the author's love for nature and his deep desire to open human eyes on what is going on against sea-life under the name of the industry of fishing, whaling, etc. Projecting a conflict between man; Jim, and nature; represented through a sea-beast; 'The Legendary Whale', the young and budding novelist showed man's inferiority to nature and natural forces and warned him against pursuing futile attempts to conquer nature, harm it or tame it. The budding novelist wanted to say that it will not be possible to avenge or conquer nature even if it harms us. He urges human beings not to mess with nature or confront it even if it causes some harm as nature acts naturally and instinctively and not deliberately or aggressively. He asks human beings to exercise control over their dealing with nature and not to try to subjugate or exploit it for their own vested interests otherwise human beings are bound to suffer from the repercussions of any confrontation with nature.

The novel reflects the fact that the novelist is a strong defender of nature and a protector of environment. He made a loud cry in favor of nature so as to rescue it from the recklessness and aggressiveness of human beings. He called for a wise revision of many human behaviors in dealing with nature and

environment. The course of the novel reflects the fact that man is incapable of understanding nature around him and therefore he is doing injustice to it. It tells us that, by harming nature, human beings are damaging their own life. If that type of reckless impulses, such as those of Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Boxtel are accumulated, activated and made the dominant norm in dealing with nature, then nothing will remain in nature except carcasses and human beings themselves will perish immediately as a result of such a reckless relation with nature. The novel dramatized and depicted this fact artistically, effectively and skillfully. All the characters of the novel found themselves victims in one way or another because of the reckless misbehaving with nature as perpetrated by characters like Jim, Sikes, Rosa and Boxtel and therefore they paid a heavy price. Jim and many characters; such a Rosa, Sikes and Boxtel are the direct incarnation of their own impulses and therefore they became the victims of their own recklessness. Jim and many fishermen considered that the legendary whale as an utter evil and a destroyer of business, but in fact, it was not doing something wrong. It was acting, instinctively, as whales have been doing since millions of years. It was not possessing any evilly intentions against Jim or other sailors. What has happened to Jim and the sailors, at the end of the novel, reflects the consequences when man fails to understand the norm of nature and enters into a conflict with it and its powerful forces. The novel shows that the vision of the novelist about nature and environment is deeply ingrained within

his mental and aesthetic build up and it was displayed literarily, artistically and dramatically, through the texts of the novel. In fact, the course of the events of the novel shows that the novelist was very much influenced by the calls to protect environment, nature and their valuable treasures. Therefore, he dramatized those calls, literarily, artistically and philosophically, and produced them in the form of a rich artistic work that gives a stern and serious warning to man against going beyond his limits in dealing with nature. The novel, literarily and philosophically, showed that the consequences of a conflict with nature and its forces will be horrific and disastrous. His views on fishing and whaling, as expressed in this novel, show that he is a thoughtful artist and his views about religion, as presented in the novel, indicate that he is an open-minded writer, but he does not like misguidance, lies, superstitions and interpolated religions.

An Interview with the Author of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

Being a critic and the father of the novelist: Ali A. M. Yeddi, I was privileged to have the opportunity to conduct an interview him. I asked him some questions which I consider to be important in accomplishing my critical sail into the novel: 'The Legendary Whale'. Despite his tight timetable due to his preparations for the final exams of the third year, secondary school, he was generous to answer my questions. The following are the questions which I presented before him and the answers which he honored me with:

- *Why did you write the first literary work in English language and not in Arabic language?*
- Actually, I feel that English language is easier and near to me than Arabic language because since my childhood I have been listening to and reading a lot of stories in English language, therefore, expressing myself in English language became easier than expressing myself in Arabic language. Moreover, writing in English strengthens my ability in this foreign language, particularly, I live in a society of which the mother tongue is Arabic language. It also helps my works to reach to a larger number of readers all over of the world as English is an unrivalled international language.

- *Did you have a pre-plan of the plot structure of the novel or it started unfolding and manifesting itself while you were writing it?*
- I had had a pre-plan of the course of the novel and its plot structure before I started writing it. I was planning the dialogues between characters, which took place in the novel and the comments of the narrator, through playing the role of each character and therefore the dialogues came to be representing the characters, their motives and their psychic structure. Though some turns and events came as I was writing the novel, but the major part of the novel and its plot structure were pre-planned.
- *Why did you select writing about a foreign background and made America and coast of New York as backgrounds and Americans as characters of your first literary work?*
- I opted for a foreign background of the novel because America and western countries in general were famous in whaling. Their ships were sailing in seas searching for and hunting whales. They whaled to get meat and extract oil from the heads of some types of whales as it was used in lighting. They were also interested in catching tuna fish and other types of fish such as sardine and salmon for commercial purposes. Therefore, I found that a western background will be suitable with the theme of the novel. The reader himself knows that activities of whaling are usually practiced by westerners though Japanese also were famous in such activities.

- *Have you been influenced by Herman Melville and his novel 'Moby Dick'?*
- Herman Melville's novel 'Moby Dick' was one of many international novels about sea-journeys, fishing and whaling which I have read during my early childhood. Its message paved for me to develop the idea of this novel and both the novels depicted a common human tendency; taking revenge against a force of nature, but there are many differences between them in the structure of the novel, the factors and causes of the conflict, the consequences of the events and the philosophical vision which serves as a message to the reader.
- *When I read your novel, I observed that you are one of the defenders of environment, nature and its treasures, what do you say?*
- Nature is the most precious thing around man, but human beings are misusing it. He is dealing with it in a repugnant manner. Consequently, he is surrounding himself with uncontrollable problems. Many species disappeared as a result of man's greed and many disasters are taking place. A clear message of the novel is that man should not excessively exploit nature or harm it. If he does so, he will bear the consequences because nature has the right to defend itself and in the course of doing so and maintain its inner balance, it is the man who will suffer a lot and bear the consequences. It is this suffering which I reflected in the novel so that it may

contribute in making man aware of what he is doing and avoid harming nature.

- *The reader does not observe any sympathy from your part towards human characters in the novel such as Jim, Sikes, Rosa and Boxtel rather, the major sympathy is towards Tylo Frip and some sympathy is towards Morgan, what do you say?*
- Jim's character turned to be eccentric. His roles in the novel proved this fact. He sent his untrained son; Sikes, to fight a killer-whale which was following their ship to get some tuna fish. Sikes died and consequently Jim lost his mental balance. When he met his wife; Rosa, they quarreled with each other and each one started throwing the responsibility on the other! Then, he went, blindly, for taking revenge against the legendary whale 'Tylo Frip' without understanding that what the whale has done was a result of the instinct of getting food and defending itself and not regular norm of antagonism or aggression. Through him, I wanted to say that man is given an advanced intellect and therefore he should use it properly and do not go, like Jim, blindly after a force of nature which was not, intentionally, targeting him. Therefore, I could not sympathize with Jim. Rather, I consider that what Tylo Frip was doing is part of the instinct of nature which must be at least respected if not admired and it must not be abhorred by man. However, what Jim has done was absolutely wrong. As far as Morgan is concerned, he was a noble, sincere and

faithful character. He played a positive role throughout the novel.

- *Can I attach, in the index, specimens of your drawings which have been accomplished by you to present a tangible evidence of your vision and philosophy and support my critical argument?*
 - Yes, you have the right to use whatever material I produced to prove your critical point of views.

I wanted to present more questions before Ali, but he apologized and said to me, "Your questions are many and speaking about the novel is thrilling and exciting, but even if we devote many days, weeks, months and years to speak about the novel, we will not be able to cover all of its aspects. Moreover, my time is very tight as I am facing a crucial year that will decide my future career. I wrote the novel and when an artist creates and publishes a work of art, it is no longer belonging to him. The novel now is in the hands of the readers and critics. I have handed it over to the taste, understanding and interpretation of readers and critics. They are free to understand it the way they like and to say about it whatever they want to say."

Chapter-wise Summary of the Novel; 'The Legendary Whale'

Before going deep into the details of this critical study about the novel; 'The Legendary Whale', it is important to go through the material of the novel itself and make a summary of its chapters so as to facilitate a deeper critical understanding of its various aspects.

The first chapter of the novel opened in Jim's house on a Thursday evening. The reader met some major characters; Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Morgan, and knew about the business of Jim and its role in his prosperous life. The unnamed narrator is at the background and begins the narration by introducing Jim who, proudly, tells his wife; Rosa, about their richness and the material comfort which they reaped from his relation with the sea from which he catches fish, hunts whales, extracts whale's oil and then sells them in the market. He spoke to her about his plan to go for a fishing journey as the stock of the stored-fish and whale's oil is about to run out. The pencil drawing in the same chapter makes it is clear that Rosa admires her husband and his profession which made them rich. She was about to say something to him, but the entering of Morgan; the sincere servant, interrupted her. Morgan told Jim that he wanted to go to the market to sell the remaining stock of fish and whale's oil. Morgan also raised the attention of Jim about the necessity of going for a fishing and whaling journey as the fish and whale's oil are going to run out

of stock. Jim agreed and fixed the following Sunday as a date of departure for the fishing and whaling journey. Morgan went to the fish market to sell off the remaining fish and whale's oil. Then, Jim asked Rosa what she had wanted to say before Morgan entered. She suggested to him to take his son; Sikes, with him in the coming journey so as to train him in fishing and whaling. After some hesitation and pondering about the dangers that may be faced in such journeys, he agreed to take Sikes with him. Sikes rejoiced the idea of accompanying his father without knowing what fate was hiding. Thus, what was roaming in the mind of Jim was extended by Morgan and created, in the mind of the reader, the anticipation about a new fishing and whaling journey. In this way, the plot of the novel started unfolding and the thread of the narration started weaving itself to urge the reader to continue reading to know about the details and events of the coming journey. Jim left the house and on his way to the market, he met Systen; a port officer, who expressed his desire to accompany Jim in his next fishing and whaling journey and he suggested to Jim to take Taigo; a strong African hunter, in the proposed fishing and whaling journey. Jim agreed and went to the market to join Morgan in selling the remaining stock of fish and whales' oil. They worked together till night. Thus, right from the first chapter, the unnamed narrator, who is at the background, introduced not only Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Morgan, but also made the reader think about the sea and Jim's relation with fishing and whaling. He introduced also Systen and Taigo. Thus, the first

chapter paved the way for creating the source of the coming events of the novel and established a prospect of the expected journey and the setting of the whole story; the sea, and the anticipated events.

The second chapter shifts the scene to an inn where Jim and Morgan went after they had finished selling the remaining fish and whale's oil. In the inn, Jim met some sailors and Morgan met Taigo who was suggested by Systen. Morgan asked Taigo to accompany them in their planned fishing journey which will start on the following Sunday. Taigo agreed. Then, Jim and Morgan returned home. On the following early morning of Friday, Jim, Morgan and Sikes went to the port to prepare for the expected journey on Sunday. They have been on the ship till Saturday night. They returned home to pass the night and return to the ship on the following morning.

Chapter three opens with the date of the planned journey; Sunday. Systen was monitoring the process of sailors' boarding of the ship; Lingnerland, and allowing only Christians and skillful fishermen and whalers to board the ship. Taigo could not join them as he was ill. Families came to pay farewell to the sailors. Sikes kissed his mother and paid farewell to his two brothers. The ship; Lingnerland, departed the port towards the open sea. The fishing activity started, immediately, after Lingnerland became far away from the coast. This chapter introduces the reader to the culture of fishing and whaling; its superstitions, and the difficulties which fishing journeys face in

the form of sharks which take away the efforts of the fishermen. It shows how hunters avoid them to safe the nets and the caught fish.

Chapter four introduced the reader to an orca whale and showed its policy of stripping hunters from their caught fish and the anger of the fishermen against it. It projects a beginning of confrontation with a huge orca whale. Taisam introduced its name to the reader. It is called Tylo Frip. It continued to be called so till the end of the novel when the narrator, out of admiration for it and admission of its exceptional power and intelligence, called it as 'The Legendary Whale' and the author used it as a title of the novel. Tylo Frip realized that Lingnerland is a fishing ship, therefore, it followed the ship so as to eat from what the fishermen catch. This angered the fishermen who decided to confront it. Systen, in his attempt to spear and kill Tylo Frip, fell into the sea and got killed by it. Chapter four ends with Jim's decision to confront Tylo Frip if it continues to strip them of their hunt.

Chapter five projected another attack launched by Tylo Frip against the hunt of the fishermen. Sikes requested his father to let him jump into the sea to confront and kill Tylo Frip. Initially, Jim refused, but under the pressure of Sikes' insistence on confronting Tylo Frip, he gave his consent. Sikes dived, but he did not appear on the surface of the sea. After some time, Jim saw stains of blood on the surface of the ocean. Madly, he jumped into the sea and some men followed him. They brought

Sikes' body onboard. Jim was under intense psychic pressure that put him on the boarder of madness. He was mourning the death of his son. Chapter five ends with the decision to halt fishing and whaling operations and return to New York. As Sikes' body started getting decomposed, they threw it into the sea.

Chapter six opened with the arrival of Lingnerland at New York port. Jim was reluctant to go and meet his wife, but Morgan convinced him to go and tell her about the truth. The meeting between Jim and Rosa was a sad drama that reflects the psychological trauma which the parents were experiencing as a result of Sikes' death and the extent of the tense relations between them that shattered the warmness and happiness which was dominating the family life. It reflected the extent of the loss of reason a human being may experience when he fails to accept the fate that affects him. It is one of the most dramatic chapters of the novel. It hiked the tension of the events of the story and depicted the psychic collapse of, both, Jim and Rosa, the drought of emotions between them and the departure of warmness that was existing between them. The couples could not withstand the loss of their son. There was a total misunderstanding between them. Irrationality dominated and wisdom disappeared. Although Jim admitted that he is foolish and reckless, nevertheless, he threw the responsibility on Rosa. Rosa, on her part, considered Jim to be a murderer. Jim physically assaulted Rosa who cried and consequently the neighbors called for the police. The police came to their house and both of them were

taken to the police station. Jim was fined and released. They returned home. Rosa isolated herself into a room. She asked Morgan about Sikes' body. Morgan told her that it was thrown into the sea as it started getting decomposed. She became sadder and told Jim that she will never speak to him unless he kills that whale. The idea of taking revenge was already potent also in Jim's mind as he had started thinking about killing Tylo Frip even before Rosa made its killing as a precondition to normalize the relation between them.

Chapter seven told the reader about Jim's final decision to take revenge against Tylo Frip. He organized a second journey for that purpose, but he told Morgan that they want to fish and hunt whales. Jim was keen on taking Taigo with him as he is a strong and good hunter. This chapter described the arrangements for the revenging journey. To collect more information about Tylo Frip, Jim visited a friend scientist who is well acquainted with the knowledge about sea-life. The day of the journey; Friday, came and the ship was ready to depart. Sapt was monitoring the process of boarding the ship; Lingnerland. Taigo; an idol worshipper, came and Taigo stopped him, but he proved his hunting skill and thus convinced Sapt to allow him to board the ship. Then, the ship departed to the open sea. Jim initially, was not within the sights of the sailors. Everyone started giving his own analysis about Jim who was out of their sights for sometimes and finally he appeared.

Chapter eight presented Jim's desire to summon sailors to speak to them. Addressing them, Jim said, "We sailed to search for it." He wanted to antagonize them against Tylo Frip, lure and mobilize them to kill it. That is why he brough a box which was full of gold-coins to lure sailors by making it a gift for whoever kills Tylo Frip. He also brought a box full of spyglasses to detect Tylo Frip from far away. He also showed them that he prepared his own spear which was longer and sharper than other spears. His attitude and anger towards Tylo Frip appeared on his face and in his reaction towards it when he hears its name. Taigo was well-acquainted with Tylo Frip and provided more information about it. Many sailors were mobilized to kill Tylo Frip. Sapt, Fagin and Morgan were in favor of fishing and whaling. Therefore, they were against Jim's idea to confine the journey for killing Tylo Frip. Boxtel was a sole instigator of Jim to confine the journey for killing Tylo Frip. He has gone to the extent of urging Jim to kill whoever stops on his way to kill Tylo Frip. Thus, the elements of external conflict between Jim and Tylo Frip and internal conflict among sailors themselves were fully established. Those whom Jim succeeded to mobilize cheered, "Death to Tylo Frip" though they also; like Sapt, Fagin and Morgan, wanted to fish and hunt whales to get some money, but they could not oppose Jim. They were under the influence and mobilization of Jim's 'main stream narration' and the luring of his gold-coins. The effect of mobilization on some sailors made them consider a squid to be Tylo Frip! In the presence of

the instigator; Boxtel, Fagin raised his voice against Jim's sole attempt to confront Tylo Frip and consequently Jim threatened him. Morgan also expressed his desire to direct some efforts to catch fish and hunt whales.

Chapter nine started with a vivid portrayal of the sea-escape with its dark and stormy horizon, blowing wind, heavy rains, huge waves and staggering of the ship. Sailors failed to convince Jim to hunt sperm whale, but finally Sapt succeeded in convincing him by telling him that such a hunting will bring Tylo Frip near the ship. Nevertheless, they could not hunt the sperm whale as the weather was rough. Jim decided to steer the ship towards the northern pole, but Sapt was against such an idea, consequently, Jim became angry with Sapt, threatened him and expelled him from his room. At this point, the novel shows that Fagin, Sapt and Morgan were the main opposers of Jim's reckless plans to pursue, solely, the idea of killing Tylo Frip and neglecting the idea of fishing and whaling for commercial purposes. Thus, the opposing attitudes of Sapt, Fagin and Morgan towards Jim and Boxtel and their conflicts were exposed. It contributed in creating tension on Lingnerland.

Chapter ten described the successful hunting of an old sperm whale. It depicted the skill of the sailors in killing a huge whale. The novel gave the details of cutting the whale into pieces and the process of extracting oil from the head of the whale and storing it. It also depicted a shift in Jim's attitude from frustration to some measures of hope of meeting with Tylo Frip and killing

it. However, Jim was not happy as the sailors till then did not see Tylo Frip. A grey whale appeared. Jim wanted the sailors to hunt it violently as this may attract Tylo Frip because orca whales like to eat grey whales. This chapter depicted the events of hunting the grey whale and reflected the usefulness and skills of Taigo and other African hunters, but Tylo Frip did not appear. The sailors saw also a flock of right whales. Morgan went to tell Jim that the sailors want to hunt a right whale, but Jim, under the instigation of Boxtel, was not in favor of hunting it. Morgan conflicted with Boxtel and the latter threatened to kill Morgan. The crew hunted the right whale without waiting for Jim's permission, but again Tylo Frip did not appear. The obsession with killing Tylo Frip and the conflict with the crew made Jim ill and therefore, he underwent some medical monitoring by the doctor; George, who advised Jim to take rest and avoid anger. This medical advice itself angered Jim as the obsession with killing Tylo Frip was swimming in his mind.

Chapter eleven contained stories within a story that were relevant with the general subject matter of the novel. It began with the submission of Jim to doctor's advice to stay calmly and avoid anger because his health continued to deteriorate. Then, his health started improving and an idea came to his mind. He thought that it may help in attracting Tylo Frip. He summoned his sailors and asked them to start catching tuna. Fagin and Sapt understood Jim's plan. The sailors caught two tuna fish, but Tylo Frip did not appear. They came across a hunting ship;

Todoshima. Jim decided to meet its captain; Bill and inquire about Tylo Frip. Bill told Jim that they have seen Tylo Frip. He told Jim about his story with Tylo Frip and how he lost many sailors, including the officer John, during their confrontation with Tylo Frip. He advised Jim to avoid confronting it. Jim did not like Bill's advices and therefore he wrapped up his meeting with him and asked him to go to his ship. After listening to Bill and his story with Tylo Frip, Fagin also advised Jim to avoid confrontation with Tylo Frip. This angered Jim and therefore he expelled Fagin from his room. He asked sailors to hunt tuna and throw it into the sea to attract Tylo Frip.

Another hunting ship called Interquiek was passing-by. Jim and some of his men went onboard of Interquiek to meet its captain and get more information about Tylo Frip. Its captain; Hawkins, told Jim that he saw Tylo Frip and a battle broke out between them. Hawkins gave details about his encounter with Tylo Frip and described its fierceness. He lost his father and brother in that battle. Jim listened to Hawkins' story about his costly confrontation with Tylo Frip, but it did not deter him. He tried to make Hawkins, like him; ride the motive of taking revenge for the death of his father and brother, but Hawkins was wiser and more rational than Jim. He got a lesson from the death of his father and brother and wanted to make it a lesson even for Jim, but Jim was stubborn and stone-headed. Jim pretended to be firm in his intention to confront Tylo Frip and asked his men to keep what they heard from Hawkins as secret and not to tell other

sailors, but he admitted his fear from Tylo Frip to Boxtel who encouraged him to continue fighting against it.

Again, they came across a hunting ship called Kaitfodam of which captain was called Oliver. Jim went onboard of Kaitfodam to listen from Oliver about Tylo Frip. He told Jim that Tylo Frip avoided fighting his men. Jim returned to the ship disappointed and continued to lure his men with the box of gold coins. He was obsessed only with killing Tylo Frip and nothing else. Even the loss of drinking water as the result of the strong wind which staggered the ship and made the barrels of water fall and get wasted did not bother him. He was nervous and out of his sense to the extent that he was about to shoot Fagin who came to tell him about the possibility of facing shortage of drinking water. At the end of this chapter, Jim spotted Tylo Frip, but when they sailed to the spot where he saw it, they did not find anything.

Chapter twelve opened with the on-going search for Tylo Frip. It also gave account of Jim's dream which troubled him. He searched for an interpretation of the dream. Sapt's interpretation of the dream which was supported by Fagin troubled and angered Jim as it foreshadowed the dire consequences of his revenging mission whereas Boxtel's interpretation coincided with Jim's desire to kill Tylo Frip. He was in favor of Boxtel's interpretation. There was a strange voice which pierces the sea-escape. Jim thought it to be the voice of humpback whale or a blue whale. In his attempt to know the source of that strange voice, Sheigo dived into the sea, but he disappeared. Sailors

attributed the voice to a ghost. Jim saw a brown body, but it disappeared and he could not know what was it as it was misty. A hunting ship called Franklin was passing-by. Its captain came onboard of Jim's ship. Jim took him into a special room and closed the door. The captain of Franklin told Jim that they saw Tylo Frip a day ago and the strange voice was of Tylo Frip so as to frighten sailors and make them avoid confrontation with it. Jim ordered to direct the Lingnerland eastward and when Sapt objected to his order, he knocked Sapt on his face and belly and made him undergo medical care.

Chapter 13 opened with George's medical care for Sapt who has been knocked by Jim. Meanwhile, Tylo Frip appeared and therefore the sailors lowered the boats to confront and kill it. This chapter is one of the dramatic chapters in the novel. It depicts the fierce battle between Tylo Frip and the sailors. The orca whale emerged triumphant after causing a heavy casualty among sailors. Jim sustained an injury on his leg, therefore, he remembered Sapt's interpretation of his dream although he rejected it in the past. However, in spite of the deep injury in Jim's leg and doctor's and Fagin's advices, Jim was still insisting on fighting Tylo Frip. He got more doses of instigation against Tylo Frip from Boxtel.

Chapter 14 opened with a brawling between Jim and Fagin because the latter asked Jim to put an end to the mad journey and let them go back to New York. This chapter depicted also a second meeting and fighting with Tylo Frip in which even Boxtel

participated. Boxtel's participation made Morgan happy as he was knowing that it will be Boxtel's end. The battle ended with a heavy casualty on the side of Jim's men. Boxtel was killed. Jim changed the weapon of fighting Tylo Frip and decided to load and use the pistol. He got indulged in a monologue and spoke to his own pistol. It reflects the effects of the psychic pressure on the mental balance of Jim.

Chapter 15 opened with some men spotting Tylo Frip again. It depicts a third battle in which Tylo Frip killed many men and attacked Lingnerland itself. This escalated the confrontation and made Jim go mad. He continued luring the remaining men with the box of gold coins in order to encourage them to continue fighting Tylo Frip. Fagin blamed him for causing the death of sailors. Jim could not bear Fagin's blame and therefore he shot a bullet at Fagin's head and killed him. Fagin's body fell and got stuck between the ropes which tie the boats to the ship.

Chapter 16 opened with the shock of the sailors for the murdering of Fagin by Jim and the strong staggering of Lingnerland which was widely opened at the bottom by Tylo Frip and water gushed inside it. Sapt blamed Jim for killing Fagin just because he expressed his opinion. It is the stage when Jim remembered the meaning of his dream which started rewinding in his memory. He realized that Sapt's interpretation of the dream was right though he rejected it and Boxtel's interpretation was partially wrong, nevertheless, he accepted it. He realized that

Morgan was right when he accused Boxtel of instigating him against Tylo Frip. Tylo Frip destroyed Lingnerland and started destroying the remaining boats which were still fighting it. George, the cookers and many men have already drowned. At then, Fagin's staring eyes and haunting spirit started operating against Jim and they continued to chase and torture him. The situation was very tense and dangerous. Death was surrounding Jim and the few remaining men. He threatened to kill anyone who tries to escape from the boat. He ordered them to attack Tylo Frip, but none was having guts to do that, nevertheless, they obeyed him and continued fighting Tylo Frip. He wanted to get rid of them to escape legal prosecution, in New York, for murdering Fagin. Therefore, he involved them in a desperate and futile fighting against Tylo Frip. All of them were killed and Taigo was the last to die, nevertheless, Jim alone continued to fight Tylo Frip. At that moment, and in a counter vengeance, Jim was confronted by, both, Fagin's spirit, Tylo Frip as if they wanted to take revenge against him; each in its own way. Jim underwent a slow death in which he was attacked by Tylo Frip and as he was drowning, he was haunted by the spirit of Fagin till he died.

Chapter 17 opened with the victory of Tylo Frip after destroying the ship and boats and killing all sailors including Jim himself. Nobody remained except Morgan who found a piece of floating wood and sat on it. Tense continued to emanate as Morgan was facing dangers of sharks and the fact that Tylo Frip

was still around. However, Tylo Frip has never seen the face of Morgan among those who fought it. Therefore, surprisingly, it remained near Morgan's floating wood. Its presence near Morgan's wood guarded it against any attack from sharks till he was rescued by Todoshima hunting ship. Bill; the captain of Todoshima, listened to Morgan who told him about the story of the battle between Tylo Frip and the sailors, the destruction of Lingnerland and the death of all sailors including Jim himself.

Chapter 18 opened with the arrival of Morgan at the port in New York where he started narrating the events of the confrontation between Tylo Frip and the sailors. He talked about the murder of Fagin and the legal repercussions which Jim would have faced if he had been alive. An officer in the port, rightly, said, "Nature, sometime, carries out justice". Although Jim died, there are still people who hold Jim's convictions and ready to fight against nature to protect the economic interest of the fishing and whaling industry. Speaking about Tylo Frip, another officer in the port said, "That whale is hampering trade. We must kill it. Where was it heading to?" Another officer said, "A month ago, a ship which is called Retaldiom arrived. Its sailors came back without whales. Its captain; Tom, told us the reason behind losing their hunt. The reason was Tylo Frip only. It's really a thief. The whale kept troubling them all the way to the shores of New York city." They started collecting information about the direction to which Tylo Frip has gone and said that they will send warships to fight it. Morgan warned against such an action, nodded to what

the officer said and without saying goodbye, he departed the port. He went to Jim's house and told Rosa about the mad mission in which she ingulfed her husband and caused his death. She got shocked to receive the news of the death of her husband and started screaming and acting in a similar way she had done when she heard about the death of Sikes. The meeting between them was a stock-taking moment and an account inventory which made Morgan stamp truth on the face of Rosa. Morgan told her that she was behind the death of, both, Jim and Sikes as she convinced Jim to take Sikes and later on, after the death of Sikes, she instigated Jim to take revenge against Tylo Frip. His meeting with Rosa, morally, regenerated Rosa who regretted her wrong decisions and considered her tongue to be behind her calamities. Morgan went to condole the families of the dead sailors. Meanwhile, four warships departed to search for Tylo Frip and kill it. The narrator left the reader to guess about the events of the new campaign against Tylo Frip and think about another mad journey to kill it so as to protect fishing and whaling industry. Morgan continued to remain honest to Jim's family and noble towards them. He joined Bill's crew and participated in many fishing and whale-hunting journeys. He became rich and reared Jim's orphans who grew up and they also joined Bill's ship.

The Genre of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

The genre of a literary work can be known from the way the story is told. The novel: 'The Legendary Whale', belongs to sea-fictions, naval-adventure fictions or maritime-fictions which are a genre of literature that gives the major setting of the story on the sea. In this novel, the focus is on human relation not only with sea, but also with a sea-beast that lives in the sea and, instinctively, acts and in the course of acting, it confronts human beings. This gives an adventurous and dramatic significance to the novel as that confrontation creates a disaster to a fish-and-whale trader who started reacting against the instinctive behavior of that sea-beast and this finally led to a disaster for all sailors; except Morgan, while the sea-beast came out triumphant. Thus, it is a sea fiction with adventurous qualities.

The novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is, both, an adventure and revenge story. It is that type of story in which sailors confront whales and sharks and enter into a fighting against them. Thus, it can be categorized as a sea adventure and revenge story with its setting on high seas and its actions that center on an attempt to chase and kill an orca whale which ate the hunt of sailors, killed some of them at the beginning and, at the end, killed all of them; except Morgan.

The novel: 'The Legendary Whale' shares some qualities with popular sea fictions. It is clear that while writing it, the novelist was influenced by Herman Melville's novel Moby Dick. There are many points of similarities of incidents between the novel: 'The Legendry Whale' and the novel: 'Moby Dick'. For example, the main characters in, both, the novels get engaged in revenge battles against a whale and engage others also in their personal revenge. Both sustain a physical injury during confronting whales; a whale cut Ahab's leg and another whale injured Jim's leg. Like Herman Melville's novel: 'Moby Dick', Ali A. M. Yeddi; the author of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', also makes his main character; Jim, offer gold coins to whoever kills the whale, but the whale comes out triumphant and becomes a true protagonist in the novel. Moreover, in the novel: 'The Legendry Whale', Jim asks the captains of other ships about Tylo Frip and in the novel: 'Moby Dick' also Ahab asks for news about the white whale. However, what makes the production of the novel 'The Legendary Whale' distinct is that it comes in a time when there are calls for the protection of the environment and its natural treasures. This gives the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' a special significance. If 'Moby Dick' was a criticism against misbehaving with nature, the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is not only a criticism against misbehavior with nature or taking revenge against a sea-beast, but also a call to put an end to the mad exploitation of nature and stop destroying it in the name of fishing and whaling.

The adventurous characteristics of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', lie in the fact that, in the process of fishing and whaling, an orca whale; Tylo Frip, came across the ship: 'Lingnerland', and deprived sailors of their fish and therefore they decided to confront it. Hence, the novel acquired and initiated its adventurous aspects. In the process of that adventure which made sailors confront Tylo Frip, Sikes; the son of the captain; Jim, died and this ignited in Jim a strong desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip. This highlighted the adventurous characteristics of the novel. As a consequence of the death of Sikes, Jim contracted a single-minded desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip and this obsession with searching for Tylo Frip so as to take revenge against it, put the literary piece also in the genre of quest novel because the plot of the novel depicts Jim's undergoing through a complicated and long search for a whale and entering into many encounters and confrontations with it and these encounters and confrontations made the novel not only a quest story, but also a revenging story that contained stories within a story. These confrontations with Tylo Frip fill the novel with actions and drama that typify this genre and make it a true adventure story that sought taking revenge. The actions and drama of the story affected not only the physical health of Jim, but also his mental health, rationality, wisdom, relationships and life as a whole. The examining of Jim's mental and psychological condition in his quest to search for, find and kill, Tylo Frip turned the story into a kind of a thriller in the form of a revenge tragedy

in which the reader sympathized with some victims and did not sympathize with others. Thus, it has the characteristics of a tragedy that gave rise to fear and horror, but not pity for the central character; Jim. Pity may arise for some other characters who opposed Jim and became victims of his reckless motive. The quest of Jim to take revenge against a force of nature that acts instinctively made him an antihero who did not nurse any noble cause nor did he search for any higher aims of life. He became a revenge-ridden clown who is ready to destroy everybody and everything in order to take revenge against a creature that acts instinctively. Therefore, he is an antihero; a main protagonist who lost the sympathy of the reader because the story depicts an unholy war against a huge sea-creature; Tylo Frip, which is dangerous and unknown as the sea itself, but if it is not provoked, it does not have any antagonistic motive towards ordinary human beings like Morgan. Hence, the climax was achieved or reached through actions that produced pity for those who deserve to be pitied for. Its ramification was that, at some moments, Jim realized that what he was doing was wrong and therefore it caused his fall, but he still continued his mad mission till he died. Another ramification is that Rosa also realized that her tongue was behind the death of, both, Jim and Sikes and therefore she underwent some measures of moral regeneration. Only Morgan remained steadfast to stand for truth, wisdom, rationality and nobility.

The novel depicted a disastrous fall of the central character; Jim, who turned into a mix of weird sanity and insanity; a psychopathic, and this mental state of affairs drove the actions in the novel, increased the fuel in the fire of taking revenge and this on its turn, turned the story into an adventure story. The storyline is driven by Jim who is obsessed with taking revenge against the huge orca whale; Tylo Frip. Killing of Tylo Frip becomes the reason behind planning the second sea-journey and devoting it solely to search for a sea-beast and kill it. Thus, the novel possesses the characteristics of sea-adventure story which is typically full of actions and events that are dangerous and at the same time exciting. It took place far away; on high seas, and depicted a confrontation with a sea-beast and thus this made it not only dangerous and exciting, but also exotic. It is a serious and monumental work which has a broad appeal to readers. It does not have much sense of humor. Therefore, as it is suggested earlier, it is a story that can be prescribed as a textbook in the school level as it attracts young people in schools and makes them go through a serious adventure that costs participants their lives. In fact, the novel deserves to have a film version that thrills young school students and becomes a source of enjoyment of a wonderful adventure and at same time helps them in learning English language through its communicative and functional aspects and realize that nature has its own weapons that protect it and therefore human beings should not mess with it.

Plot Structure of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

Plot is the sequence of the events, actions and motives of the story, novel and drama that are performed through characters. Those events and actions as well as the characters who perform them and the motives they nurse, all, act as elements of exposition that initiates and presents the conflict which on its turn creates further actions that ascend towards the climax and then descend to resolution. In other words, the conflict ascends and reaches its peak of tension and it, then, descends to resolution. The plot focuses on the central conflict which is created by the interaction of the characters among themselves and with the world around them. In this process, the central conflict soars and climbs towards the climax, gets resolved and then descends towards the end of the story. The plot structure of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is no exception to all these aspects of plot-making. Before going into the analytical details of the plot structure of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', it is important to make a critical chapter-wise summary of the novel so as to pave the way for following and understanding the main aspects of its plot structure and development.

The first chapter of the novel acts as an exposition chapter or the beginning of the rising arc which introduced some of the main characters such as Jim, Rosa, Morgan and Sikes. Jim appeared as the central character and remained as a major maker

of the conflict in the novel. The text of the novel and the illustration in the first pages of the novel showed that Jim was in a state of rejoicing the wealth which he got from the profession of fishing and whaling. The first chapter opened on a romantic note and reflected the happy relation between Jim and Rosa and the luxurious life which the family of Jim was leading. Jim told his wife; Rosa, about wealth he had reaped from fishing and whaling and the sea-journey which he is planning in order to supply the market with fish and whale's oil. The aim of the novelist is to prepare the reader to an opposite state of affairs in the family that will rise later on. Rosa wanted to speak about something, but Morgan's asked for permission to enter the room. His entry interrupted her. Morgan told Jim that he wants to go the market and sell off the remaining stock of fish and whale's oil. He expressed also the need for organizing a new journey to bring more fish and whale's oil to the market. Thus, the initial pages show that there was a shortage of, both, fish and whale's oil in the market as expressed by, both, Jim and Morgan and there is a necessity to organize a sea-journey to supply the market with them. This triggers the ideas and actions in the novel and attracts the attention and expectations of the reader. It moved Rosa to ask Jim to take Sikes with him so that he may learn the profession of his father. Jim, initially hesitated to take Sikes as there are dangers in such journeys, but under the insistence of Rosa, he accepted. The initial pages of the novel give clue about the staggering nature of Jim's character that seems to have a sixth

sense as he was worried about the idea of taking his young son in such dangerous journeys. The reason for Jim's initial hesitation to take Sikes sticks to the mind of the reader and makes him think that there is something which is going to happen. Thus, the first chapter introduced the elements that create the dramatic tension which made the main characters start acting and reacting on choices and exploiting the arising situation to create action or put the foundation for it. The novelist's way of pacing the story and introducing the information shows that the plot started structuring itself in such a way that urges the reader to continue reading it. Thus, right from the beginning, the reader is made to think and sink deep into the details of actions and motives being introduced. This urges the reader to continue reading the novel. The reader likes to know what will happen next and therefore he continues to get grounded in the world of the story and become keen to know about the main character; Jim, and his statements about the coming sea-journey. The initial idea and clue about the setting; the sea, and the coming world of the story also have been suggested through the arrangements for the fishing journey to pave the way for the expectation about the arising actions related to the mainline of the plot. The story started knitting the thread of the narration and introducing expectations about the unfolding story to build up the plot and develop the narration. The main source of action, reaction and conflict related to the major events has been introduced to create the rising action. A significant aspect of the novel is that it introduced illustrations to give an

immediate vision of characters, setting and mood of the story. The illustration in the first pages of the novel which depicted the life of Jim, his luxurious life and his relation with Rosa is vivid. It projected the cordial and happy relation between them and established the foundation for a contrast to the changing and twisting relations that will take place later on in the novel between them due to the arising events.

The second chapter shifted the reader to the inn where, both, Jim and Morgan sat for some time to arrange for the fishing and whaling journey. The reader came to know about more characters such as Systen, Shomo and Taigo. The illustration related to the inn added to the details about the physical appearance of the characters and the setting of the inn that is located near the fish-market and the sea-port. Thus, in the initial two chapters, the reader got a broad picture about the characters; Jim, Rosa, Sikes, Morgan, Systen, Shomo and Taigo. In this way, from the first two chapters of the novel, the attention of the reader was fostered and the course of his curiosity was aroused and drawn towards the real source of the actions of the novel, the expected setting and sailing and the course of fishing and whaling.

Chapter three talked about Jim and his crew who were in the port preparing for the departure. The members of the crew of the ship; Lingnerland, paid farewell to their families. Sikes kissed his mother and paid farewell to his brothers. Systen monitored the process of boarding of the sailors and the ship

departed and moved towards the open and stretched sea-escape. Immediately, as they reached the open sea, they started fishing activities. Thus, chapter 3 initiated the actual course of the sea-journey and the fishing activities.

Chapter four introduced the exceptional orca whale; Tylo Frip, which started doing its familiar instinctive work; depriving fishermen from their hunt. Gradually the attention of the reader was focused on Tylo Frip, its huge body as illustrated in the same chapter, its behavior and the reaction of the sailors in general and that of Jim and Sikes in particular towards its behavior. Jim considered it as a thief and the main attention started rotating around the arising tendency to confront it. This gripped the attention of the reader and added to his expectations about the coming actions of the novel. Systen tried to fight it, but he fell into the sea and got killed by Tylo Frip which dealt with him fiercely and his body disappeared forever.

Chapter five introduced Sikes' insistence on fighting Tylo Frip. Thinking that killing a whale is part and parcel of the profession of his father that must be learned, he insisted on confronting Tylo Frip. Jim, initially, refused to allow him to confront Tylo Frip, but under the insistence of Sikes, he accepted. The moment Sikes came face to face with Tylo Frip was illustrated and the reader observed a tiny body in front of a huge whale. Sikes died in that confrontation and consequently Jim went out of his sense and suffered from the shock created by the death of his son. This ignited anger and the desire to take

revenge in Jim. Sikes' body was retrieved from the sea, but it was thrown into the sea again as it started getting decomposed. It is indeed an emotional moment which the reader experiences specially when he remembers the final kiss which Sikes gave to his mother and the farewell he paid to his younger brothers. This generates a source of pity for him. Thus, the factors and elements of the driving force of the conflict between Tylo Frip and the crew of Lingnerland were fully established and the actions were expected to soar up with ramified effects.

Chapter six deals with Jim's returning home in a broken state of affair. Rosa came to know about the death of Sikes. She lost control over herself and accused Jim of being a murderer and considered him as a criminal who exposed his son to a sea-beast. Thus, the death of Sikes disturbed the relation between Jim and Rosa. She got engaged in a wrangling with Jim that landed them in police center. Jim paid a fine and, both, returned home. Rosa told Jim that she will not come in a normal term with him unless he kills the whale. She became sadder when she knew that Sikes' body had been thrown into the sea. These events hiked the tension in the novel and urged the reader to continue reading to know what is going to happen next.

Chapter seven opened with Jim's move to take revenge and therefore he organized another fishing journey in which his main motive was not commercial fishing or whaling, but only killing Tylo Frip. He started preparing for the journey which was devoted to take revenge. In order to collect more information

about orca whales, he visited a sea scientist. He also bought a new, longer and sharper spear and took with him a box full of gold coins to lure sailors to fight Tylo Frip for him. Moreover, Jim mobilized good sailors like Taigo who has the skill to hunt whales. Hence, the true conflict began to build up in the novel. This gave rise to many actions and situation of the novel and determined their progress forward. While boarding the ship, Taigo proved his spearing skills to Sapt. The revenging journey started and Jim was onboard, but did not appear for some time. This gave rise to suspense and anticipation. Then, Jim appeared and asked Morgan to summon sailors for an important declaration. The illustration in this chapter depicted the anger which was on the face of Jim, his desire to engage sailors in this revenging journey and his determination to confront Tylo Frip. The content of the chapter was part of the building up of the rising actions and this attracts the reader to continue reading along with the rising arc of the plot structure and its actions.

Chapter 8 opened with Jim's addressing the sailors and revealing his main purpose behind the new journey. He declared that his main intention is to kill Tylo Frip. He made it his single priority and started a process of mobilizing sailors, collectively and individually, to fight Tylo Frip. He got engaged in anti-Tylo Frip campaign and told them that it is a 'business destroyer'. He gave them the spyglasses, showed them his new spear, lured them with the gold coins and shouted loudly 'Death to Tylo Frip' and, ironically enough, some sailors shouted repeatedly, 'Death

to Tylo Frip', 'Death to Tylo Frip'. Jim tried to gain Taigo's support so as to devote him to in his revenging task. This indicates that Jim's propaganda; 'mainstream narration', that serves his own personal motives, had a magic effect on many weak, mentally hollow and financially bankrupt sailors. However, many sailors such as Fagin, Sapt and Morgan were against Jim's intention to engage them in a fight against Tylo Frip to accomplish a personal revenge. Conflicts emerged between these two groups and this gave rise to many actions in the novel. During these conflicts, the two groups served to produce sayings, actions and reactions that illuminate each other, reveal the mindsets of each other and expose the extent of the grip of the motive of taking revenge over the mental state of affairs of Jim and its contribution in pushing the actions of the novel forward. There are many characters who were carrying out what they are ordered to do by Jim without questioning because they were easily mobilized around the slogan: 'Death to Tylo Frip' and lured by the box of gold-coins. Jim's mobilization of some sailors and luring them with gold-coins blurred their vision till one of them considered a colored squid to be Tylo Frip. Jim was boiling from within to meet, confront and kill Tylo Frip. This strengthened the motive of revenge and made it produce more actions in the novel. Jim continued to remain at the center while other characters were subordinate to him; whether they were against the revenging project, supporters of it or just passive characters like the doctor or the cooks. A character like Boxtel

turned to be an instigator of Jim and his supporter to fight and kill Tylo Frip. Jim became mentally and physically attached to him as illustrated in the same chapter. He instigated Jim against his opposers such as Fagin, Sapt and Morgan. Therefore, Boxtel was despised by them. Jim became physically and mentally detached from Fagin and Sapt who opposed him and even banned their entry to his room. He confronted Fagin who tried to advise him while Morgan spoke to Jim to convince him to do away with Tylo Frip, but he failed. Boxtel went to the extent of instigating Jim against Morgan, but Jim rejected Boxtel's instigation against Morgan as the latter was his sincere servant. Thus, this chapter presented the growing conflict among characters which contributed to the continuous rise of actions and the progress of the development of the plot.

Chapter 9 opened with the scene of dark clouds and blowing wind. It depicted the grotesque, dark and fatal prospect of the Jim's revenging task. Meanwhile, sperm whales appeared. Opposing views again came to the surface regarding whether to hunt a sperm whale or not. Jim was against hunting them while other characters, including Sapt, wanted to hunt a sperm whale to get some money. He, successfully, convinced Jim by saying that hunting a sperm whale may lure Tylo Frip to appear near the ship. Jim accepted as he wanted to employ everyone and everything to accomplish his personal revenge. This made the reader expect that the sailors will, shortly, meet with Tylo Frip, but it did not appear. Moreover, the weather condition hampered

their ability to hunt a sperm whale. The sperm whales noticed what was going on around them, got alerted and dived deep into the sea. The illustration attached in this chapter depicted the dark and cloudy surrounding and the utter failure of sailors to hunt a sperm whale. Jim got frustrated because his main concern was to bring Tylo Frip near the ship in order to kill it, therefore, he was not sad for the disappearance of the sperm whales. He thought of sailing towards the north pole in searching for Tylo Frip and consequently he clashed with Sapt who opposed such an idea. Thus, this chapter presented the continuous clash of opinions among sailors that added actions and reactions and presented their mood and their attitudes.

Chapter 10 opens with a second encountering with sperm whales in a vast sea-escape as illustrated in the same chapter. The sailors hunted an old sperm whale, but Tylo Frip did not appear. Jim got disappointed and angry. His anger made him express his readiness to eat Tylo Frip's meat after killing it, but Fagin said that orca's meat is not eatable, however, this comment by Fagin angered Jim and made him argue with Fagin. This exposes the deteriorating mental balance of Jim. He was not ready to listen to anyone who opposes his views regarding any matter. The sailors encountered also a grey whale and hunted it, but Tylo Frip did not appear. They encountered also a flock of right whales. The crew went into an argument about the usefulness of hunting a right whale. The argument led to a quarrel between Boxtel and Morgan. The sailors hunted a right whale, but Tylo Frip has not

yet appeared. Too much thinking about Tylo Frip, day and night, exhausted Jim, made him ill and put him under the care of the doctor; George, who advised him to avoid anger and eat well, but Jim was stubborn as the idea of killing Tylo Frip was swimming in his mind. This chapter presented sailors' encountering with various types of whales which made the clash of opinions among sailors continue to the extent that exposed Jim as not only a dictator, but also as a mentally troubled person. Thus, this chapter contributed to the rising action of the plot structure.

Chapter 11 opens with the deterioration in Jim's health. He realized the necessity of following George's medical advices and consequently his health improved. This chapter enriched the structure of the novel by adding a variety to the main story in the form of the tales related by captains of many hunting ships. Their subject-matter was an extension of the main theme of the story and relevant to it. Jim met the captains of the hunting ships; namely, Todoshima, Interquiek, Kaitfodam and Franklen. He wanted to collect more information about Tylo Frip. He invited Bill; the captain of Todoshima onboard. Bill said that they have seen Tylo Frip and lost a sailor while confronting it. He advised Jim to avoid fighting with it. Jim was stubborn and did not accept Bill's advice. Rather, he got irritated and asked Bill to depart to his ship. Hawkins; the captain of Interquiek, welcomed Jim onboard and told Jim that in his encounter with Tylo Frip, he lost his father and brother. Hawkins' story made Jim stagger in his determination to confront Tylo Frip. He himself got worried

about the danger of encountering Tylo Frip, but when he remembered Sikes, he decided to continue searching for it and killing it. He asked the men who accompanied him to Interquiek not to tell their fellow sailors on Lingnerland about Hawkins' tale as he wanted to sustain their morality and readiness to fight Tylo Frip. Moreover, Boxtel pumped in Jim more instigation to confront Tylo Frip. Then, Jim met with Oliver; the captain of Kaitfodam, onboard of Kaitfodam. Oliver told Jim that Tylo Frip avoided fighting them and headed towards the north. This tactic of withdrawal by Tylo Frip and avoiding fighting against Oliver's sailors encouraged Jim to continue searching for it in order to kill it. He continued to be obsessed with killing Tylo Frip to the extent that he has not bothered even about the falling of the barrels and the loss of drinking water. Tension increased as Jim confronted with Fagin as illustrated in the same chapter. He argued with Fagin and threatened to kill him just because Fagin told him about the fall of the barrels of drinking water and the danger of facing shortage of drinking water. Jim's main concern continued to be killing Tylo Frip and this exposed his obsession with revenge, gave actions to the novel and contributed to the development of its plot.

Chapter 12 added more elements of suspense to the story by telling the reader about a strange voice which the sailors heard, but they could not know its source as the mist was dense. Sheigo became a victim of attempting to jump into the sea to know the sources of the strange voice. The dense mist and the

strange voice gave way for some aspect of the gothic element to intrude into the novel and causes fear out of the unknown. It also paved the way for superstitious interpretation of the strange voice. It was considered by one of the sailors as a roaring of a ghost that met Sheigo. The same chapter added more relevant varieties to the main story by incorporating Jim's dream which troubled him. The subject-matter of the dream added extension to the main theme and enriched it. Ironically, the dream was a foretelling of what will happen, but Jim could not realize it because he was preoccupied with only one aim; killing Tylo Frip. In other words, the dream was a clear foreshadowing of what is going to happen. The interpretation by Sapt added to Jim's trouble and unrest, however, he did not accept Sapt's interpretation as it may deter him and other sailors from confronting Tylo Frip. He accepted Boxtel's interpretation of the dream as it appeased him. Boxtel considered the whole dream to be something stupid and urged Jim not to think about it. Both, the strange voice and the significance of the dream came together to add elements of suspense, anticipation and tension to the novel and increase the curiosity of the reader. Then, a hunting ship; Franklen was passing-by. Its captain told Jim that the strange voice was of Tylo Frip. It produced it so as to scare sailors and force them to change the direction of their ships and avoid fighting it. Tension was increased as Jim and Sapt quarreled. Sapt expressed the desire of sailors to go home and told Jim that he may go and take revenge alone. The quarrel between them was

illustrated in the same chapter. Jim's knocking of Sapt's face and belly and threatening to kill him with his pistol added to the tension of the novel and revealed the rising tension between Jim and many sailors.

Chapter 13 opened with George's medical care for Sapt. After a long waiting and searching for Tylo Frip, this chapter introduced the first confrontation between the sailors and Tylo Frip during the second journey. It was, vividly and pictorially, depicted through an illustration in the same chapter. As a result of this confrontation, sailors lost five boats, Darnay died and Jim's leg was bitten and injured. The first battle ended with Tylo Frip's victory over Jim and his men, nevertheless, Jim was still insisting on fighting Tylo Frip. He was not ready to listen to any advice from anybody who wants from him to stop thinking about fighting Tylo Frip. At the same time, he welcomed Boxtel's instigation to continue fighting Tylo Frip. This chapter is one of the dramatic chapters of the novel which accelerated the rising of actions towards the climax.

Chapter 14 opened with another fight between Jim and Fagin. It increased the already existing tension on the ship. Tylo Frip appeared again while it was hunting a grey whale. Sailors lowered the boats and, strangely and to the surprise of even the reader, Boxtel also joined them to fight Tylo Frip. This changed the expectation of the reader about Boxtel who was, initially, considered by Morgan to be a pirate who has a conspiracy against Jim himself and the reader considers him as the most mysterious

character on the ship. Morgan got relieved as he knew that Boxtel will die in that confrontation. Knowing the seriousness of such a confrontation and expecting death, Jim paid farewell to his ship. This second encounter displayed Fagin's good heart and his concern about the safety of Jim. It also displayed an element of horror in the form of the remaining of Darnay's body as if the fate was warning the sailors in general and Jim in particular against continuing confrontation against Tylo Frip. In this encounter, Tylo Frip drowned Jim's boat, swallowed a sailor, torn the chest of another and suffocated and killed Boxtel himself. This chapter shows that Boxtel was bold as illustrated in the same chapter, but the way he fought Tylo Frip was not welcomed by Jim. Many boats were damaged, cracked and drowned and many men were swallowed by the sea. Tylo Frip won the second battle, too. Jim decided to change the weapon and continue fighting Tylo Frip. This chapter added further acceleration to the rising of actions towards the climax.

Chapter 15 opened with a third confrontation with Tylo Frip which was eating a baby sperm whale. It caused heavy causalities among Jim's men. After wrecking many boats as, vividly, illustrated in the same chapter, it confronted the main ship itself. In spite of the injuries it sustained, Tylo Frip destroyed the main ship; Lingnerland, itself. Therefore, Fagin blamed and cursed Jim. Consequently, Jim, out of anger, fired at Fagin's head and killed him. Fagin's body fell and got hanged among the ropes that tie the boats to the ship. The rest of the

sailors got shocked to the criminal action of Jim. Jim got scared of Tylo Frip's action and called for the remaining men to rescue Lingnerland. This chapter is another dramatic chapter which indicated that actions are rising to the peak and the climax is approaching.

Chapter 16 displayed the drowning of Lingnerland as a result of the big crack in the bottom of the ship which has been hit by the hard head of Tylo Frip. The strong actions of Tylo Frip, the drowning of Lingnerland and the sense of horror in the eyes of the sailors were depicted through a vivid illustration in the same chapter. It reflected the peak of the confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip. Jim felt the seriousness of the situation and started recollecting the details of the dream which he saw and realized the aptness of Sapt's interpretation and that the dream was becoming true. This chapter depicted the fact that Jim was overwhelmed by the sense of fear of being persecuted in New York because he killed Fagin. He wanted to get rid of his sailors so that no one will point his finger to the crime which he had committed. He asked them to remain in the boat and continue fighting Tylo Frip despite the inadequate tools and shortage of men. Tylo Frip defeated the remaining men and led them to their doom. Though Jim was in a desperate condition, he was still controlled by the desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip. In this chapter, there are elements of ghost or supernatural. Jim's inner consciousness encountered the spirit and the memory of the image of the dead face of Fagin which had been hanging between

the ropes. Jim got haunted by the staring eyes of the dead Fagin and his spirit that exhausted Jim from within. The fatal moments which he was facing, mixed between conscious and unconscious thoughts in him. It became clear that Jim ceased to exist as his normal persona and turned into a reflection of the confrontation within himself. His mind was busy with thinking about the grim side of his own dream as he was heading towards a disastrous fate. The spirit of Fagin was telling him that he is bound to face his final doom not in New York, but shortly in the ocean itself. It continued to chase him till he died. The destruction of Lingnerland, the death of the sailors and the final death of Jim represented the real climax of the novel that ended the motive of revenge and Jim's futile attempt to seek revenge ended with the destruction of the ship and the death of sailors including Jim himself with the exception of Morgan. He was the only survivor. He found a floating wood, caught it and sat on it. The actions of the novel started falling towards the final resolution. An immediate calmness that followed the shocking moments of the final destruction of Lingnerland and the death of sailors and Jim dominated the atmosphere. Even Tylo Frip itself felt that the battle is over and therefore it remained near-by, calmly, observing the solemnity of the surrounding in the wake of the death of his adversaries. Nothing was there except the eyes of the sharks which gaze at Morgan on his floating wood. The death of Systen, Fagin and other sailors embodies minor crises that lead

to the main crises in the form of the destruction of Lingnerland, the death of the remaining sailors and Jim himself.

Chapter 17 opened with a metaphoric expression which says that "Everything which caused pain and suffering to Tylo Frip had been dipped into the water." It has a deep meaning which depicted the nature of the conflict and its final end. It pointed to the sinking of the ship and boats and drowning of Jim and other sailors except Morgan. It reflects the dire consequences of taking revenge. Though many characters were against fighting Tylo Frip, but they also died. This suggests that an invisible retaliation or a torture that falls upon a culprit or a sinner may affect others also who were innocent, but they were around the culprit at that moment and could not stop him. Many disasters in human society take the same shape. This exactly happened to those who drowned after the ship was wrecked, particularly George, the cookers and many innocent sailors. This chapter added some elements of fear through the appearance of shark around Morgan. They stared at him and tried to make him a meal. He killed one of them with his knife by stabbing it on the head. The other sharks disappeared not because Morgan had killed one of them or had a knife in his hand, but because they noticed the presence of Tylo Frip in the area. As illustrated in the same chapter, Morgan sat on the floating wood. He was holding a knife in his hand. However, he realized that so long as Tylo Frip is near his floating wood, sharks will not attack him. Therefore, he took a nap and had a dream in which he saw himself at home with Jim

and he was helping him in his business. Strangely, Tylo Frip acted as a guard to Morgan till Todoshima rescued him. Though this chapter depicted the falling of the actions towards the final conclusion, the presence of sharks added some elements of tension and fear and the dream of Morgan added a further variety to the denouement that was heading towards resolution.

Chapter 18 depicted the return of Morgan to New York. It constituted as a final relief to the reader. At the customs of the port, Morgan met some officers and narrated to them the story of Jim's confrontation with Tylo Frip, killing of Fagin and the death of the rest of sailors including Jim himself. The officers realized that Jim would have been prosecuted if he had returned, but "nature, sometime, carries out justice" as one of the officers puts it. Ironically enough, although Jim died in the pursuit of taking revenge against a force of nature, some business-minded circles in the port who were benefiting from the industry of fishing and whaling, considered that Tylo Frip is a trade destroyer, therefore, they spoke about sending warships to kill it. It means that Jim's disease in the form of antagonism towards Tylo Frip continued to exist in the minds of other people such as the business-minded circles in the port. Morgan got resented from what they said and warned them against such a venture. Then, he departed them without saying goodbye, went to Jim's house and told Rosa about Jim's death. She got shocked, but Morgan said to her, "You are behind the death of your husband and your son, as well." Rosa regretted sending her husband to fight Tylo Frip. She realized

that her tongue was behind the loss of her husband and son. Then, Morgan joined Bill's ship while warships sailed to search for Tylo Frip and kill it. Morgan became rich and took care of Jim's two sons who grew up, joined Bill's ship and took up the profession of their father. Morgan did not forget 'The Legendary Whale'.

The above chapter-wise critical analysis makes it clear that the events and actions, as indicated in the above chapters, were in line with the process of developing a compact plot and fostering it. It is clear that the plot of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', has the usual stages; namely, exposition, rising actions, climax, falling actions or denouement and resolution. It has an excellent pyramid with its rising actions which culminate in the climax; the point of turning and the beginning of the falling actions or denouement towards the resolution. It means that the novel adhered to the structural elements which are necessary to structure a plot. It has a beginning, middle and end that are bound together effectively through an effective narration of the ascending crises that led to the climax and then the actions passed through the denouement phase that leads to resolution. Hence, it is a typical sea-story that complements to the general stages of developing the plot structure. It can be called that it is a conventional structure as it has a lot of the characteristics of the common traditional plot structure. The novelist, successfully, engineered it according to the form of the classic plot structure. The narrative technique, coherently, supported the stages of the

plot development and its threads, closely, interweaved to build up a well-fostered plot as the novelist has organized his plot in advance. In other words, it is clear that the plot structure has not unfolded itself as the novelist wrote the novel, but, as it was said early, it was prepared in advance and accomplished effectively and artistically.

The novel was made up of 18 chapters. The chapters were, serially, numbered and each chapter was given a title. Numbering chapters is a universal literary formula. By titling and numbering chapters, each chapter becomes a mini story in the line of a single major story, a unified plot structure and a general interwoven thread of the narration of the whole story. This helps the reader to remember the content of the ongoing narration, think about what is going to happen, easily link new events to the past events and hence the reader's curiosity was aroused, his attention was fostered and therefore he continues reading the novel. Many chapters had more than a single major scene, therefore, the same chapters were sometimes separated by slashes to mark the change of the scene, the shift of the time, etc.

The novel is highly episodic, specially, in the phase of the rising actions, because there is a real conflict in the novel that gave rise to actions and situations. Initially, the actions were motivated and created by the desire of Jim to supply the market with fish and whale's oil. Rosa convinced him to take Sikes with him so that he may learn the profession of his father. The first sailing met with a naughty whale which feeds upon the efforts of

sailors. This angered the sailors and therefore they confronted it. However, Jim has gone to the extent of confronting it with his inexperienced young son; Sikes. The confrontation led to the death of Sikes that became an inciting incident that lies between the minor exposition at the beginning of the novel and the major escalation and rising of its actions in the second journey. Rosa got shocked by the death of her son, quarreled with Jim and urged him to take revenge, however, Jim was not in short of any instigation to take revenge as he was full of anger against Tylo Frip; the thief and trade destroyer as it was termed by Jim. He organized another journey under the name of fishing and whaling, but he diverted the efforts of the sailors and employed them to kill Tylo Frip. Thus, the actions were motivated and created by the desire of Jim to take revenge. The confrontations between Jim and Tylo Frip developed further events that made the plot reach to the climax by the destruction of Lingnerland, the death of Jim himself and his failure to take revenge for the death of Sikes. Everything went wrong and Jim himself became another victim of the force of nature which acts instinctively and not out of a deliberate antagonism. The destruction of the ship, the death of Jim and the grim fate of many fishermen, all, mark the beginning of the falling of actions which led to the final resolution. The actions of the novel dramatically rise and reach their peak the moment Jim finds and fights Tylo Frip and gets killed by it. Then, the actions of the novel start descending towards resolution after the battle was over and the death of Jim.

It means that it is the main initial event; death of Sikes, that generated series of conflicts in the novel, escalated the actions, fostered the plot of the novel and developed the narration. It created the real conflict in the novel; within the family of Jim, among sailors and between man and nature. It can be considered as the main incident that paved the way for the main plot to progress and get developed under the incitation of the motive of taking revenge that dominated the mindset of Jim in the wake of the death of Sikes. It became a source of the rising actions of the novel, pushed the structure of the novel towards the climax and the logical end and gave it a complete and unified structural shape.

One of the major characteristics of the plot structure of this novel is that the interest of the reader to continue reading the novel was maintained throughout the novel. The plot is structured in such a way that each chapter prepares and urges the reader to read the following chapter to see what will happen because each chapter was having its own dramatic significance and complications that make the reader continue reading by completing it and shifting to the following chapter to see what will happen next. In this way, the novelist made the reader continue to turn the pages of the novel and read what is next so as to know the complications and difficulties which the main driving motive has put the major character in. Each chapter or scene within the same chapter initiates a new curiosity in the reader to know what will happen next. The novelist adopted this

way of writing as it helps him to organize his thoughts and pour out his dramatic narrative imagination. This suggests that though the plot was pre-planned, the development of the structure progressed, smoothly, as the novelist wrote the novel. The narrative dialogues incited actions, moved forward and gave rise to events and thus it contributed to accomplish the structure the plot. They provided characters with new information on which they act, react, agree, disagree, conflict with each other and confront each other and in this way the process of plot structuring moved forward and actions rose to reach the climax and start falling till it reached the final resolution. All chapters contributed, closely and harmoniously, to the formation of the plot structure of the novel. The events, actions and minor stories in those chapters contributed to foster a unified plot, enhance the narration, provide it with relevant issues, develop the main theme and support the significance and aptness of the title of the novel. There are plenty of links between chapters which unify them. The main factor that linked the chapters of the novel with each other was the unceasing motive to take revenge against Tylo Frip and the narrative dialogue and comments that are closely interweaved through the type of relations that links characters and make them act and interact to present the major theme of the story; revenge.

There are no twists or turns in actions that affect the organic unity and compactness of the plot. The material of the novel speaks about the revenging task which Jim launched

against Tylo Frip. It was presented through chapters that narrate the events of Jim's attempt to accomplish his revenge against Tylo Frip. Thus, the novel possessed structural unity and organic coherence. The structure formed a story that is going forward in an excellent artistic dramatization in the form of many events and encounters with Tylo Frip which draw the attention of the reader, put him on alert about the consequences of such actions and encounters and urge him to continue reading.

The unity of place is strengthened further by the background of the events which mostly took place on high seas with some parts of the novel which took place on-shore. Therefore, the shift from on-shore to off-shore and vice versa does not affect the unity of place very much because the reader may ride the ship and embark from it in a state of concentration on the main theme of the novel, therefore, he does not feel very much the change of place between the city which is on the beach and the wide ocean. In other words, the shift between the setting of the city and the setting of the sea is not very much observable as both of them serve as a background to understand the main characters, their motives and actions and the theme of the novel as a whole.

As far as the unity of time is concerned, the plot is structured through a narration of actions that took place in the past. The exact year in which the actions of the novel 'The Legendary Whale' occurred is not indicated in the novel. Sometimes within the novel, there a flashforward or elements

which enable the reader to build an expectation and anticipation about the future events in order to increase suspension and develop the reader's curiosity to continue reading the novel. However, the timeline of the narrative is linear. In other words, chronologically, the actions were related to each other and ordered after each other without violation of the chronology or sequence of the timeline. Moreover, there is a smooth shift of time in the novel. The novel begins on a Thursday and the journey is planned to be on the following Sunday. The time between these two days is filled up with suitable events through a logical narration that observes the span of time and gives relevant actions that happened between them. Hence, the timeline of the novel started knitting itself in a convincing manner. There were two journeys and the novelist continued to be minute in mentioning the days in the beginning of each journey and then, gradually, he avoids doing so after putting the reader in the narrative line and time of each journey. Then, the reader goes through time-indicators such as "On the following day", "On Saturday", "at Saturday night", "On Sunday morning", "The crew started their work after finishing their breakfast", "Half an hour later", "That night", "Four days later", "On Friday morning", "Three days later", "Two days later", etc. Thus, the conventional mode regarding time, place and action is not violated, but observed and adhered to. It moves forward in a logical sequence and coherent manner and revolves around the theme that unfolds itself as it progresses. There is a unity of

timeline in which the events take place from the beginning to the end. All these have a positive influence on the structural unity of the novel. Thus, the novel has a narrative unity which fosters the development of the plot and makes the reader comprehend the main theme of the novel easily and without any confusion.

The development and progress of the plot of the novel and the creation of its actions and mood are made through physical movements, actions, sayings, reactions, thoughts, feelings, attitudes, emotions, dreams, monologue, spirit of a dead person; supernatural elements, etc. The main concern of the novel is about a motive that controlled over the main character; Jim. It is the motive of taking revenge against Tylo Frip. Jim's excessive desire to take revenge created physical movements, actions, sayings, reactions, thoughts, feelings, attitudes, emotions, dreams, monologue, spirit of a dead person; supernatural elements, etc. up to the end and contributed to its structural and thematic unity and narrative coherence. It can be considered as the main motive in the novel and has a main role in fostering the plot structure. This motive made some characters get involved in the process of that personal revenge and instigated them to act according to Jim's order while some other characters opposed it and tried to stop Jim from continuing to get engaged in it. This created minor motives and crises that led to further actions and reactions that consolidated the structure of the novel, influenced the progress of the narration and developed its theme. It means that the minor motives were reactions to the main motive. Jim's

strong desire to take revenge and the instigation and incitation which was initiated by Rosa has been supplemented by Boxtel role in the novel. The strong desire to take revenge has been nourished by Jim's obstinacy and contributed to the development of actions that continued throughout the novel till the death of Jim himself. It means that main motive created events and minor motives in the story and led to a logical end of the story which was a sad and tragic in nature without leaving behind any true heroic touch with any human character. However, the story ended in a satisfying manner because everything which was supposed to be said has been said and the actions of the novel ascended, reached the climax and descended to the resolution. The reader can see a reasonable amount of rising and falling actions that give the novel its logical and satisfying beginning, middle and end and design the excellent pyramid of its plot structure. As the plot ascended to the climax, the major dramatic irony presents itself in the form of the circumstances which went against Jim's desire to train his son and after the death of his son, the major dramatic irony presents itself in the form of the circumstances which went against Jim's desire to accomplish his revenging mission. Those inconducive circumstances influenced the actions and resulted in the death of Jim himself as if the legendary whale was in a counter-revenge task against Jim and has been served by those circumstances. It was the moment in which the whole mission of Jim collapsed and the plot's actions descended to their ending. Jim's death marks the climax of the

novel and the turning point of the plot in which the events of the novel started descending to resolution in a logical manner. It is the crisis after which there is a resolution. Morgan escaped death, got saved by Bill's ship, returned home and informed Rosa who regretted for sending Jim to take revenge against the whale.

The novel displays uniqueness in its plot structure. It depends on two journeys. Each journey has its own actions and it can be a separate story with its own exposition, rising actions, climax, falling actions and resolution. However, the expositions, rising actions, climaxes, falling actions and resolutions of the two journeys are so closely related and interrelated to each other to the extent that makes both of them a single intact story because the first journey gives rise to a second journey which became a consequent upon what has happened in the first journey. The beginning of the novel that prepares for a fishing and whaling journey, the death of Sikes, Jim's restlessness, Rosa's reaction to it and the tension which prevailed in the family, all, gave a logical development to the actions which took place in the second journey. In other words, the actions that took place in the second journey depend on the consequences of the previous actions in the first journey, therefore, the actions of the whole story are, closely, interrelated and linked with each other and contributed to the unity of the plot structure. There are a lot of events between the first encounter with Tylo Frip which led to the death of Sikes and the last encounter with it which led to the destruction of Lingnerland and the death of Jim and sailors. In the wake of the

death of Sikes, Jim declared his intention to pursue taking revenge against Tylo Frip. He pursued the task of taking revenge which led him to his doom. The actions of the second journey climbed to reach the climax and get resolved by the death of Jim who got involved in taking revenge for the death of his son in the first journey. Thus, it can be said that the actions of first journey arranged for the development of the actions of the second journey, created a single well-developed, well-knit and well-fostered plot. The novel progresses on single line of actions and the sequence of timeline chronology and the unity of the plot are maintained through sequencing and ordering its events in a chronological manner. The conflict reached the climax where the threads of the narration unwind themselves through the actions in which Tylo Frip kills its main pursuer; Jim, and many characters; even those who were against Jim's obsession with revenge. Consequently, Jim's motive for taking revenge reached its end with the destruction of the ship and the death of all sailors, except Morgan.

The main source of the conflict in the novel is the death of Sikes and the main source of action in the novel, its unity and coherence springs from the motive to take revenge. The death of Sikes gave rise to the growing of the motive to take revenge which made Jim embark upon a single-minded tendency to pursue vengeance and mobilize the fishermen's energy and time for accomplishing the task of killing Tylo Frip even if it was in the north pole. Therefore, Jim spent the whole second journey

searching for and fighting Tylo Frip. The domination of the desire to take revenge influenced the working mind of Jim, his daily behavior and night dream and paved the way for a lot of actions in the novel. The obsession with taking revenge became a source of the actions, initiated the course of events and situations in the novel and escalated them. The desire in Jim to take revenge turned into an embodiment of chronic loss of reason and wisdom which made him ready to kill anybody who comes on his way to smoke out Tylo Frip. It is this obsession to take revenge against Tylo Frip and the chronic loss of reason that gave spirit to, and shaped as well, the driving force of actions, kept the narration going on and fostered the plot of the novel. In fact, the obsession to take revenge became an irresistible force that got hold over the mind of Jim, created conflicts, actions, reaction and became the basis of structuring the plot. It dictated Jim's entire existence and drove him to his dome.

The novel enriched its events through multiple confrontations between Tylo Frip and Jim and among the sailors themselves. Each confrontation, during the two journeys, reached to a peak and ended to make a way for the other confrontation to reach its own peak and end. Those confrontations motivated the progress of the novel forward and at the same time contributed to its unity and coherence. The confrontation during the first journey killed Sikes, created tension between Jim and Rosa and affected their relations. Confining the second journey for the task of killing Tylo Frip

influenced the internal relations among characters and created tension between Jim and many fishermen. Many sailors were against Jim's obsession with killing Tylo Frip and sacrificing the desire of the fishermen to catch fish and hunt whales for oil. This created actions in the novel that made the reader keen on knowing the outcome of those actions.

The final destruction of Lingnerland and the death of Jim marked the climax. Then, actions started falling towards resolution. This made the reader get relieved from the tension which have been established by the conflicts and crises in the novel and enabled him to see how some characters faced their doom and how some other characters have changed as a consequence of the events of the story. Morgan rejoiced being wise and considered that his wisdom saved him from death. He joins the natural course of life and becomes rich. Rosa is not as same as she were in the wake of the death of Sikes. She has undergone a drastic change. She considered that her tongue is behind the loss of, both, Sikes and Jim and therefore she regretted for sending Jim to take revenge. Thus, the plot offers a suitable end to the novel.

The event of the death of Sikes, the death of Systen, the fighting between Jim and Rosa and the actions took place later on between Jim, sailors and Tylo Frip indicate that the novel has multiple storylines, but all of them are closely related to each other. Thus, the development of the plot depended on the occurrence of many events which are related to each other by the

desire of Jim to take revenge for the death of his son. They reflect the inner journey and conflict that the characters experience and lead to the growth of many of them and a better understanding of the outer journey of life. They also contribute to the inner structure of the plot; its form and cohesion. As the plot depicts an external conflict with an outside force, it depicts also aspects of the internal conflict throughout the novel, particularly, at the end where Jim started blaming himself for not accepting Sapt interpretation of his dream and for not listening to the advices of those who were around him. Driven by the desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip, Jim rode his whims and consequently the actions of the novel started rising and taking hold of the attention of the reader who expected the appearance of the adversary of Jim at any time. Therefore, the reader remained alert in the same level of the alertness of Jim himself. The reader develops the desire to continue reading so as to see in what way Jim will react when he confronts an instinctive creature which acts naturally and instinctively and does not have any deliberate antagonism towards Jim or any other human being. The events of the novel progress on such a drive and make Jim sip the consequences of the final confrontation.

The plot derives its unity and dramatic aspects from the fact that all the events were centered around the idea of taking revenge and Jim waited for that moment in which he kills Tylo Frip. As the reader reads the novel, he remains under the expectation of the confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip. The

novel continued to produce interesting events which are relevant to the main theme; revenge. This unceasing motive for taking revenge paved the way for many events to take place. Even the passing-by ships were devoted to supplement the development of plot and its structural and thematic unity. Jim came in contact with them to get more information about Tylo Frip. They provided a relevant variety to the main motive and enriched it with short stories which contained confrontations and encountering with Tylo Frip itself, but with their own variety. Thus, the constant motive to take revenge linked the parts of the novel, lend it with dramatic actions and relevant stories and at the same time maintained its coherence and unity. The motive for taking revenge was a unifying and driving force that contributed to the development of the general structure of the novel and maintaining its unity. The motive of taking revenge maintained the process of weaving the events and actions of the novel. Thus, the overall lay out of the structure of the story is well-organized. The strong motive to take revenge made Jim try to apply them where they do not apply because it represented a conflict between man and nature. Therefore, there were conflicts and confrontations that escalated and gave rise to serious actions which led to the destruction of the ship and the death of all sailors except Morgan.

Throughout the chapters of the novel, the plot continued to introduce elements of conflict and amplify them through the rising actions till they reached the climax and descended to

resolution. Jim's refusal to listen to the advices of those who were sincere to him, escalated the actions and contributed to the development of the plot of the novel. He was rude to those who advised him because the tendencies for taking revenge blinded his heart before blinding his eyes and destroyed his reasoning ability before destroying him physically. Moreover, some characters like Rosa and Boxtel encouraged and instigated Jim to go ahead with his avenging motives. Pursuing the tendency for taking revenge reached to its dramatic peak by the death of Jim which served the 'climactic' function and the reader gets a satisfying experience as it provided a final closure and a suitable resolution to the story. Thus, the novel has a unique plot structure and the chapters remained intact with each other in spite of the shifting of the scenes and events between them and within them. The shifts from one scene to another and from one chapter to another was smooth, logical and convincing.

There are many serious situations in the novel which direct the course of action from that of mere a hunting journey to serious situations to another level of tension and line of dramatic progress. In the first journey, the main character; Jim, with his companions began a normal fishing journey, but things turned into another situation. A huge orca; Tylo Frip, started eating what the sailors' catch. This angered them. A strong desire to fight Tylo Frip arises in sailors, particularly, Jim and Sikes and Systen. Systen wanted to confront it, but he did not listen to the advice of a professional and consequently he fell into the sea and got

killed by Tylo Frip. Sikes convinced Jim to allow him to fight Tylo Frip. He got Jim's consent and jumped, boldly, into the sea to fight Tylo Frip, but it killed him. Then, a strong desire to take revenge grew in Jim due to the death of Sikes. He organized a second journey in which the revenging tendencies controlled over Jim and made those who were on the ship get involved in a battle with nature and with Jim himself. Jim was thrusting those who were onboard into his project of taking a personal revenging. All these actions created dramatic shift in the rising actions and reaction.

The novelist maintained the unity of the plot and coherence of narration without any jarring or confusion as they spring from the motive of revenge and reactions of various characters to it. Despite the varieties of actions, the course of actions created a supporting narrative-line that poured into the main plot, pushed the narration forward and highlighted the main theme. The theme has been developed through the sayings, actions and events which are performed by various characters. There are events which arise out of the kind of the relation that Jim maintained with different characters. This makes the reader think that the plot may take another shape and the narration may take another turn due to the clash between many characters. However, all of them contributed to maintaining the unity and coherence of the plot through effective artistic controlling and weaving of the threads of narration and nourishing the development of its theme. As we will see later on, the varieties

of events are closely interwoven and the reader does not feel that there is any sense of digression, break or shattering in the structure of the novel.

Though the novel has apparent simple structure, but that simplicity should not be obscured as just a kind of narrating incidents through a simple discourse that sequences the events of the novel. In other words, though the discourse of the novel is simple and the novelist made a natural introduction of the story, but it has its own deep and suggestive aspects and the layers of meaning are, deeply, ingrained within it. By concentrating on the suggestive aspects of the discourse, the novelist made the reader examine the meaning behind the texts of the novel. The multi-layered meaning of many dialogues and texts influences the reader and makes him remain always eager to see what the dialogues and texts are hiding behind their direct meanings and what is going to happen and therefore the reader continues to read the novel without halting because he expects that there is something serious which is going to happen. In this way, the plot has been developed through an effective technique of quoted and unquoted texts that develop the interest of the reader about their hidden meaning and significance. This makes the structure of the novel not only just a means of telling story in a simple manner, but also a means of conveying a philosophical theme which has a deep message that must be realized and remembered by the reader and acted upon accordingly so as to safe, both, human beings and nature.

The plot structure of the novel incorporates many elements and images that contribute to its development and fostering. It incorporates the description of nature with its city-escape, sea-escape, sky-escape, clouds, rains, lightening, mist, Tylo Frip, etc. They have their own recurrent and symbolic significance that unifies the plot structure. Actually, the introduction of those elements and images and interaction with them contributed to create actions, develop the plot and unifying it. It started from Jim's house which was on the beach as well as the fish market and the inn which were near the sea and all of them were having relevance to the sea more than their relevance to the actual city. This created a close bond between the city background and the sea background of the novel. There is a vivid description of the sea-escape with its dark clouds that appear in the horizon, its wind, mist, waves and rains. The major setting in the novel is the sea-escape which dominated the novel and acted as a major and continuous background that plays a unifying role. Most of the time, the reader was with Jim on the ship. The sea-escape gave the novel its structural background and color and pointed to its physical and philosophical dimensions. Physically, the sea provided a vivid image in the form of the sea-escape. Philosophically and symbolically, with its natural contents, the sea stands for the benevolent and destructive aspects of nature. Jim reaped a lot of wealth from it and became rich, but when he, through a wrong decision, loses his son in the sea, he forgot the benevolent aspects of the sea and opted for taking a revenging

task on the sea-beast that made him reap nothing except destruction and death while the passing-by ships recognized the benevolent aspects of the sea and sailed back safely to the shore. Thus, the sea acquires a unifying symbolic and philosophical characteristics and dimensions. It is in fact the second major non-human unifying symbol after Tylo Frip. Tylo Frip, on its turn, is both a symbol of the power of nature and an element that unifies the structure of the novel as the whole novel rotates around him. Therefore, in examining the structural unity of the novel, Tylo Frip and the sea shall be, carefully, examined in relation to the development of the plot.

The plot structure incorporated dreams, self-address, monologue, in the form of Jim's speaking to his pistol and supernatural elements in the form of the spirit of Fagin. All have their own contribution in structuring the plot, enriching the narration and enhancing the relevance to the main theme of the novel. Jim saw a dream in which all the crew were tired and lying on the deck of the ship. It has its symbolic significance and a manifestation of the internal conflict which Jim suffered from whereas the conflict between Jim and Tylo Frip was a major manifestation of the external conflict in the novel. In his dream, Jim saw a huge whirlpool surround the ship and Tylo Frip, wet with blood, jumped above the surface of the water and started swallowing the ship. He saw also that he jumped to the water before Tylo Frip swallows the ship, a bullet stuck in Fagin's head and a man without head. He saw also his right leg was cut and he

was the only man who survived, but he dived into the water and reached the bottom of the sea. The dream troubled him and therefore he searched for an interpretation. Sapt gave Jim an apt interpretation, but he did not like it as it warns him and gives him a grim picture of the prospect of his revenging mission while Boxtel tried to mitigate the effect of the dream on Jim by giving an interpretation that coincides with Jim obsession with fighting Tylo Frip. Thus, the dream fits itself into the general line of the plot structure, adds a relevant variety to the narration, enriches the theme and makes the reader start pondering on the interpretations of, both, Sapt and Boxtel and continue to read the novel to know which interpretation is going to be true. Morgan also, while on the floating wood, dreamed that he is at home and went with Jim to the market to help him in his business. Partially, it came true as he went to Jim's house and supported his family. Before his death, Jim was haunted by a stream of consciousness in the form of self-address that regrets for not listening to those sailors who advised him. He addresses himself by saying, "I wish that I listened to them." During his death, Jim underwent a mental state that was dominated by Fagin's image which was gazing at him and the spirit of Fagin which was addressing him. Fagin's spirit says to Jim, "You will come with me soon!", "No pain again," "You will come with me in less than one minute," "Next moment! Goodbye." The spirit of Fagin became like a talk from an airport control tower that directs the plane during the process of landing. While Jim was descending towards the

bottom of the sea, the spirit of Fagin whispered into the mind of Jim till his body landed on the bottom of the ocean. It provides a variety in the form of supernatural element and the revenge of the unseen that paralleled the general theme of Jim's revenge against Tylo Frip. Hence, it become a relevant variety that fosters the plot of the novel and enriches its theme. The monologue that projects Jim's speaking to his pistol, the dream and its details and interpretations, the self-address that laments for not listening to those who advised him and the spirit of Fagin that haunted him, all, became relevant varieties and introduced thoughts and actions which contributed to the development of the theme in general and fostering the plot in particular. The self-address results from the realization that the excessive desire to take revenge drove Jim to a fatal end. He was on the brink of departing consciousness and temporarily living within the frame of sub-consciousness. It reflected Jim's internal conflict, gave his obsession with revenge a symbolic dimension that created a kind of stream of consciousness and helped in diversifying the sources and the components of the plot structure. The dream, the monologue, the spirit of Fagin, the self-address, all, were related to the main theme. They added to the narrative variety and contributed to the symbolic richness of the drama of the actions of the novel. At the end of the novel, two revenges appeared. One of them was physical and the other was non-physical and both of them were directed against Jim. They confronted Jim's revenge and defeated it. The revenges of, both, Fagin and Tylo Frip were

accomplished against Jim, but Jim's revenge was not accomplished. At this moment, the conflict was resolved and the plot reached to the resolution stage where it started descending to follow up and continue the rest of the story pertaining to Morgan, his rescue by Todoshima, his arrival at New York, his meeting with Rosa and taking care of Jim's children.

Structurally and thematically, there is neither incoherence nor digression in the novel. It is well-knitted through the thematic relevance that deals with the issue of taking revenge and sequences the actions in a coherent manner through logical and chronological timeline. The course of the progress of the plot structuring was supported by introducing elements of anticipation and searching for information. The elements of anticipation became a source of suspense in the novel. They were mixed with Jim's expectation of not knowing anything about Tylo Frip or he may not see it if he does not know about it. This made Jim seek information about orca whales in general and Tylo Frip in particular from a sea-scientists and about Tylo Frip from the passing-by ships. This offered opportunities to enrich the novel with stories within a story, gave rise to new situations and provided actions that extended the narration and introduced new characters who appeared, played their role and disappeared, but they were also participants in observing Jim's excessive tendencies to fight Tylo Frip and giving their comments. The stories within a story serve the purpose of the same theme without any digression or unrelated issue. In other words, though

the structure of the novel incorporated shifts from on-shore to off-shore background and introduced varieties of narration in form of stories within a story provided by the sea-scientist and the captains of the passing-by ships, there was no any digression, break, shattering, unrelated issues or shift of subject in the story. This form of structure paved the way for some picaresque elements to creep into the course of the novel though it does not follow the picaresque traditions in which digression, unrelated issues and shift of subject are common. It differs from picaresque novels in the sense that it has a well-knit plot structure despite the presence of stories within a story. In spite of the narrative varieties, the plot structure remained intact and its narration has never been boring because it was full of not only suspensions and anticipations, but also contained major and minor dramatic events and actions that pour into the development of the structure of the novel and the creation of its theme. It means that those stories within a story provided a variety in the narration without affecting the unity of the plot structure, the coherence of the narration or the thematic relevance. They made the novel possess the touches of the tradition of episodic novels in the form of the episodic structure through a series of discrete stories provided by captains of the passing-by ships and their encountering with Tylo Frip. They told their own encounters and adventures with Tylo Frip. The tales of the captains gave variety to narration and extended it, variations of the same theme and contributed to its elaboration and expansion, but the variety did not divert away

from the main theme to another issue, rather, it extended the main theme, gave more information about Tylo Frip, provided character-contrast and made further exposition of the characters and their motive, particularly, Jim with his obstinacy and insistence on taking revenge in contrast to the attitudes of some captains of the passing-by ships. It means that there is consistency in the course of narration and the reader never feels that he has been taken out of the story nor there has been any kind of confusion or shift of attention. In other words, there were no irrelevant feelings or details. The thread of narration continued to remain intact and each bit of the narration served to further the story, project various characters, contribute to the relevance and richness of the theme of the novel and foster the plot structure. Those stories went hand in hand with the main story which projects the obstinate and revenging mentality of Jim and the exceptional skills, strength and cleverness of Tylo Frip that counteracted the obstinacy and revenging mentality of Jim. They also enable the reader to make a contrast between the character of Jim and those of the captains of other ships who were not having time to take revenge though some of them have been affected, negatively, by Tylo Frip. Thus, they illuminated the character of Jim and shed more lights on the extent of the stubbornness of his mind and his determination to take revenge in spite of the warnings given to him by many captains of the passing-by ships.

The plot nurses a strong dramatic tension that has been escalated and multiplied by the numerous dramatic encounters with Tylo Frip. They were a source of actions and tension in the novel. Each and every encounter contributed to the unity of the structure and the development of the theme of the novel. The multiple encounters with Tylo Frip may be similar to each other in their apparent dramatic content, but they provide different scenarios and rules of engagement, create their own situational variety and extend the theme of the novel. They have their thematic relevance which help in fostering the plot and highlighting the symbolic dimensions of the confrontations. In other words, they highlighted and heightened not only the thematic relevance of the novel, but also the symbolic significance of some characters who were involved in the multiple encounters. The third and final encounter with Tylo Frip differs from the first and the second encounter in the sense that it has its psychological implications on Jim which has been escalated by, both, recollecting the dream and Sapt's interpretation of the dream and the dramatic appearance of Fagin's gazing eyes and spirit. They acted upon Jim's conscious and subconscious mind and internal feeling. They exposed his exhausted psyche which started recollecting the details of the dream and realizing that it is becoming true. It also has its own supernatural elements and reveals the fact that Jim started being haunted by the spirit of Fagin and he has no independent existence. This enriches the narration with the relevant course of

thoughts, gives its own symbolic implication, enhances the thematic relevance and fosters the plot structure.

Finally, as it is said earlier, it can be said that the plot structure of this novel has a lot of the characteristics of the common traditional plot structure. With its chronological sequence of events, it provides a clear beginning, middle and end to the novel. Nevertheless, it incorporated some elements of the modern plot structure such as the reflection of the internal conflict that goes hand in hand with the external conflict and gives a deeper meaning to the theme of the story. Though when the novelist published this novel, he was only 14 years old and thus became one of the youngest novelists in the world, he appeared as if he is a senior novelist, has an expertise in structuring the plots of novels and at the same time a professional whale-hunter who has ready details of the way of encountering whales, fighting them, killing them and extracting their oil. He, effectively, dramatized the encounters between Jim and Tylo Frip, gave them their suitable and ramified consequences and effects, developed the plot and fostered its unity, created an attractive narrative flow of the story, developed the theme of revenge and made the reader eager to complete reading the novel. Out of his love for nature and his desire to protect its treasures, the novelist dramatized his concerns with nature and environment, developed relevant and harmonious narrative threads and structured a fostered and compact plot structure.

The Narrative Technique of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

The narrative technique of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', is simple and lucid. It is similar to the oral type narrative discourse which is in the form of the speech of an individual narrator. There are many instances in which the narrator employed Hakawati technique of narration to tell not only the informative facts ingrained within the course of narration, but also its imaginative course of actions and events. The narrative mode indicates that the novelist has been very much influenced by the oral traditions in literature that transform the factual into imaginative or incorporate the factual within the imaginative. While reading the novel, the reader switches between chapters which contain various imaginative actions such as the details of fishing, whaling and confronting Tylo Frip and in this process, the reader comes in contact with factual and informative material about sea-life, fishing and whaling. In fact, the novel juxtaposes the imaginative with the factual and thus the factual also acquires imaginative and literary dimensions.

As far as the narrator is concerned, the novelist did not make one of the characters narrate the story. Although Morgan was the only survivor of the wrecked ship; Lingnerland, and the character who experienced the horrific events which he and other sailors had undergone during Jim's fighting against Tylo Frip, but he did not relate the story. The novelist employed an effective

narrative technique which puts the reader on the track of the minute details of the progressing novel. The whole narration is carried out through the unnamed narrator who is not part of the story. He is an omniscient narrator who stood at the background, became an intermediary between the story and the reader and told the reader about the whole story. Thus, the identity of the narrator is hard to establish and the reader has no way to refer to the narrator, know anything about him or identify any information about him. He is not known even to other characters themselves. They do not acknowledge his presence. It means that he exists outside the events of the story. He is a detached and unknowable to characters, but he was always present right from the beginning of the novel up to its end through his narrative dialogues, descriptions and comments. Though the narrator is neither a character nor has a role in the actions of novel, he dominated the narration and became the only source of information. The only voice in the novel is the voice of the unnamed narrator and the story is entirely told through his perspective. He became the main voice of the novel with different degrees that have been dictated by the mode of quotation, comments, descriptions, etc. He is a spectral speaker who gives the reader the direct speeches of characters, comments on their feelings, attitudes, thoughts and emotions and describes the setting and situation. Through the unnamed narrator, the novelist narrated the events of the story and unfolded its theme. He is simply the storyteller and the observer who switches between sayings, emotions, feelings and

attitudes of characters and events. He projects the thinking of characters, puts their sayings in the form of quoted dialogues that reflect their thinking, feelings, emotions, relations, motives, conflicts, comments and describes their dreams, monologue, self-address, etc., and gives predictions and clues about what is going to happen.

The plain narration is in the third person. It covered all aspects of the narration such as describing nature, depicting characters' feelings, attitudes, emotions, reaction to each other and projecting their analysis of each other. The narrator is a viewer who depicts the background, describes the characters, conveys their dialogues which were loaded; at many points, with dramatic significance and analysis of each other and offers his comments, views and thoughts. The narration included the quoted sayings of characters through the tongues of the speakers themselves. The narrator is a keen observer who tells the story with accuracy by observing characters as they talk to each other, referring to them by their names and conveying their dialogues. It means that though the story is told by the narrator whom the characters do not feel his presence, but he knows all of them by name, knows more than what other characters know and, in some situations, he makes the reader know more than what the other characters know. He was aware and made the reader also aware that the orca whale follows the fishing ships, but the fishermen were not knowing that. The reader experiences not only the whole story through what the narrator sees, hears, observes and

comments, but also, both, the external events and the internal thoughts and feelings of characters are conveyed through the narrator's vantage point. Thus, the narrator provides information that enable the reader to see the characters; their actions and relations, go deep into the minds of various characters; including the non-human character; namely, Tylo Frip, read how they work, contemplate on the events of the story and understand its theme. This narrative style made the novel rich in its textual, imaginative and literary significance. The pronouns within the dialogues may be in different persons, but when the narrator comments or describes, the pronoun becomes in the third person.

The narrator's whole-knowing characteristics are clear in describing the process of fighting and killing whales and taking out of the oil from their heads. The details of taking out of the whale's oil make the reader imagine that the novelist was a real and professional sailor, a whales-hunter and a merchant of whale's oil. In fact, it is the knowledge of the narrator about the sea and sea-life that engineered the actions of the novel and became a source of its narration. However, the novelist has expressed that knowledge about sea-life not only in the tongue of the narrator, but also in the tongues of many characters to depict their experience, but it is conveyed by the narrator. Through him, the reader comes to know about sea-life, the nature and behaviors of animals which live in it.

As the narrator is an all-knowing voice who knows everything; the outer world and the inner working of the minds

of the human and non-human characters, he has complete access to their actions, thoughts, feelings, motives and talks. He has a complete access to not only to the spoken and unspoken thoughts and feelings of the characters, but also to what was going on in the mind of Tylo Frip itself and its movements. He enables the reader to infer the inner states of characters from their sayings and actions. He has access to everything including characters' mental and emotional states. The narrator says, "At that moment, an orca whale was swimming few yards away from them." At another point, he says, "Tylo Frip was clever and it knew that this ship is a hunting ship. Therefore, it followed the ship quietly." At another point he said, "Tylo Frip noticed that the ship had diverted to another direction. It continued to follow it, but the crew did not observe it." Then, later on Jim says, "Do you think that Tylo Frip is following us?" "It did it yesterday." A man replied, "Maybe, we don't know." Later, Morgan says, "I think that the whale is still following us." It means that the narrator has the ability to describe what is going on in the mind of even the orca whale. Speaking about Sikes' confrontation with Tylo Frip, the narrator says, "Tylo Frip saw him and thought that this fellow must be the one who had stabbed it. It decided to revenge." Hence, the narrator seems to be diving into water with Tylo Frip to know its movement and he seems to be piercing into the mind of Tylo Frip to know what it is planning to do. It means that the narrative technique does not only use an unnamed narrator, but also shows him as a powerful narrator who has exceptional skills

to go deep into the thoughts of characters of the novel and even of those of Tylo Frip. He can go deep into the mind of each character and read it even while the character is drowning and dying of suffocation. The narrator reflects the character's consciousness and unconsciousness, expresses his feelings and depicts the actions perpetrated by him. For example, the narrator described Jim's condition while drowning by saying, "Jim's lungs and stomach were full of salt water. The salt water also entered deep into his eyes. He remembered all the advices which had been given to him, but he ignored all of them and now he is seeing his own end." The narrator presents the thoughts which were haunting Jim while dying. While drowning Jim said, "I wish that I listened to them." Thus, the narration indicates that the narrator acted not only as a commentator or a describer of events, but he was acquainted also with what is going on in the minds of Tylo Frip and the characters; their feelings, emotions, attitudes, etc.

The use of anonymous narrator created distance between the novelist and the narrator and allowed for an objective narrative style. This type of narrative technique is universal. It enables the reader to focus on the sayings and actions of different characters without developing affinity with the narrator himself except with his philosophical visions that represent the novelist's vision. The narrator is close to the reader and the narration attaches and detaches the reader to characters and events and shifts the eyes and mind of the reader among them. In this

process of narration, the reader comes in a direct contact with the character's dialogues and thoughts according to the arising situation. In fact, the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is a wonderful example of the effective narrational art that aims to make a close proximity with the reader and the novelist's ideas presented through the narrator. Hence, the narrative technique of this novel, closely, links the reader with the subject-matter of the text and the novelist's philosophy. It allows the reader also to have a deeper insight into characters and events and what they represent. The narrator says that Jim, "was ashamed of his foolishness and recklessness." It means that the narrator is a keen observer and has an insight into the characters' motives, feelings and thoughts. He even informs the reader about the anticipated and expected event and plants in the reader prophetic anticipations that urge him to continue reading the novel so as to know what will happen next. The narrative technique was rich as it included various quoted forms of language and through effective phrasing of suggestive dialogues, the narration used a unique voice for each character, maintained it and incarnated the character's personality and tendencies through it.

Right from the beginning of the novel, the narration grips the interest of the reader and makes him go deep into the details being introduced in order to know what will happen next and therefore the reader gets involved in the world of the story and becomes keen to know more about the main character; Jim, and the proposed sea-journey. Although the unnamed narrator is not

a participant in the novel, he remained at the background, introduced the character of Jim, Rosa, Morgan and Sikes and conveyed to the reader Jim's dialogue with Rosa, the factors that made him rich and his plan to organize a new fishing and whaling journey to supply the market with fish and whale's oil. Jim, at the opening chapter, said, "…People are buying lots of fish. It is going out of stock very quickly. This forces us to go on a hunting journey every weekend, but we can also hunt more whales for getting their oil." Then, Morgan's statement to Jim Fritz which goes, "…we must go back to our work. We have to sell off the stored fish" pushed the line of the progress of the narration, opened new avenues of anticipations and, consequently, the reader's curiosity was aroused. The idea of training Sikes in Jim's profession comes to Rosa's mind. She insists on Jim to take Sikes with him to train him in his business. Jim accepted to take Sikes with him after some contemplation about the expected hazards at sea. Thus, the statements of Jim about the coming sea-journey, his initial pondering about the danger of taking Sikes with him and his final consent to take Sikes with him urge the reader to continue reading the novel as the reader anticipates that Jim did not ponder about the issue of taking Sikes with him without reason and that there is something which is going to happen. Hence, the novel gave the reader the background; the sea, on which the course of narration will take place. The reader waited for the planned journey. He was, gradually, taken to the beach and to the open sea-escape and hence the narration

designed the story arc that arranges for the coming events in the sea and what will happen later on and thus it provided the narrative elements that are logical and necessary to engage the reader in reading.

The ship departed, the journey started, Tylo Frip appeared, Systen tried to kill it, but he got killed, Sikes insisted on confronting it, but he also got killed in the confrontation. The death of Sikes changed the course of the novel and the psychic traits of Jim who went almost mad. He returned from the doomed first journey and his relations with Rosa turns upside down. He decided to take revenge against Tylo Frip and became obsessed with killing it. Jim's obstinacy and insistence on killing Tylo Frip supplied the narration with actions and made it go on. Thus, the arising arc of events developed the thread of narration and started unfolding the subject-matter of the novel. As Jim remained continuously alert to meet Tylo Frip and take revenge. This makes the reader continue reading the novel so as to see in what way Jim will react when he meets Tylo Frip. Thus, obsession with taking revenge became a major motive that created actions, maintained the thread of narration and made it move forward. The narrator controlled the reader and gave shape to his attitudes towards the major and minor characters of the story and its events. He provided insight into each character and gave clues that foreshadow the future events and actions of the novel. He supplied the reader with interesting stories within the same story and made him expect some events in the novel by setting the tone

and drawing the scene in advance. In other words, the narration used clues to hint about or indicate the events that will occur later in the story. They appeared right from the beginning of the novel and proved to be true. Jim hesitated to take Sikes because he thought that such journeys may develop unexpected hazards. To raise further suspense and anticipation, Jim was worried that a storm may destroy the ship and all of them may die. Jim said to Rosa, "I can take Sikes with me, but I am afraid of something….If a storm hits us while we are sailing on the ocean, it may destroy the ship and all of us may die. Then, you will regret forever." It seems that Jim's initial hesitation to take revenge sprang from a sixth sense or an invisible force that whispered in Jim's ears about something that will happen. It showed the presence of the mind of Jim and his sixth-sense which expected what has, later on, happened. Such thoughts urged the reader to continue reading the novel to see what will happen as Jim's thoughts have aroused from his experience with sea journeys. In this way the thread of the narration started weaving itself towards the coming journey and attracting the reader to continue reading the novel.

The narration incorporated a soliloquy, dreams, self-address, a monologue and supernatural elements. They resulted in producing stream of consciousness, internal thoughts and external actions. Sometimes Jim went into a cursory mental flashback by remembering Rosa and his dead son; Sikes. There is a soliloquy when Jim speaks what in his mind to himself or to

non-human objects; the pistol. He walked to his table, opened the desk, took out the pistol and said, "I'll load it and fight it…I'll also take revenge for my leg…It isn't the end. I'll tear its body next time. I'll fight it with a spear and my dear pistol. This pistol also wants to take revenge for my son. Don't be sad, my dear pistol. We will both kill it."

The dream which Jim saw was a kind of a foreshadowing of what will take place and it the majority of its details took place. It was a bad omen. Different interpretations of Jim's dream by different characters increased suspense and anticipation. Through the employment of dreams and dream-interpretations, the novelist created a foreshadowing or prophecy to give a hint about the coming events, build suspense and anticipation and urge the reader to continue reading the novel. Morgan also saw a dream while he was sleeping on the floating wood. It came, partially, true as he arrived at Jim's house and met Rosa. It was a good omen that offers its own foreshadowing. The foreshadowing makes the rest of the story a kind of prophecy as expected by the reader and given by Sapt, in his interpretation of Jim's dream, while Boxtel's interpretation tried to avoid Sapt's prophecy and let the actions of the story go according to his mysterious whims and what Jim desires. It is a narrative technique that helps the reader either to develop or dismiss his expectations and anticipation about the coming events and in both the cases, the reader maintains the desire to continue reading the novel. The reader realized, like Sapt, what is going to happen

to the sailors, while most of the sailors were ignorant of what fate was hiding for them, therefore, this style of narration urges the reader to look at the characters in their face and see how ignorant they are of the fate which they will face. Seeing the worst is going to happen to the ignorant sailors became a kind of an early sign of the approaching climax and the reader wishes if he were with them so as he might make them aware of the fate which was waiting for them.

The narration gave rise to stream of consciousness and metaphysical touches that were created by the supernatural element incorporated in the novel to enrich the narration. It depicted Jim's mental problems. Fagin's face and spirit were chasing Jim while he was fighting against Tylo Frip and getting drowned in the sea. Fagin's face reappeared before Jim many times and exhausted him mentally and psychologically. Fagin's spirit said to Jim, "You will come with me soon!", "No pain again.", "You will come with me in less than one minute.", "Next moment! Goodbye.", as if Fagin was a judge who was monitoring Jim's execution while Tylo Frip and the sea were the executors. It indicated that though Jim has been in a revenging task, he has put himself in a confronting position of a person whose execution is thought not only by Tylo Frip, but also by a dead person; Fagin. Hence, it can be said that, both, Tylo Frip and the spirit of Fagin have undertaken the task of executing Jim and this gave deeper touches to the narration in general and the novel in particular and revealed the existential dilemma of the

nature of confrontation between human beings and the forces of nature. During reading about the process of the death of Jim, the reader felt the intermingling of the physical, psychological and existential world. Tylo Frip was undertaking the physical side of that execution against a person who forced him to do so while the spirit of Fagin was undertaking the psychological side of an execution against a person who killed an innocent man. In this process, not only the reader realized the justice of, both, nature and fate, but Jim also realized that he was undergoing an operation of a course of unavoidable justice that shows him the difference between life and death before killing him. The elements of self-address and stream of consciousness interfered and started moving Jim's mind and making him confess what he had done and regret for it. While dying, Jim regrets and says, "I wish that I listened to them"; meaning those who advised him to avoid confronting Tylo Frip. Jim regretted for listening to his whims and insisting on a failure mission that were leading him to his doom. He could not take revenge for his son and he himself found that he and other sailors are facing the same doom of Sikes. Before death, he was not only physically destroyed, but also psychologically exhausted and annihilated. All this gave a further dimension and variation to narration. In other words, soliloquy, dreams and supernatural elements gave rise to the stream of consciousness and internal monologue. They provided varieties that enriched the narration and became a source of

information about what will happen in future and the working of the minds of the characters.

The narration has many dramatic details that attract the attention of the reader and urge him to continue reading the novel. The reader observes such dramatic details in several confrontations between Tylo Frip and Jim and his sailors and many confrontations between Jim and the sailors. They added to the variety of scenes and actions and enriched the narration with dramatic events and situations. There are also instances of dramatic irony in the narration where the reader comes to know more than some characters in the novel. For example, the reader became acquainted with the death of Sikes before Rosa knew and therefore he continued reading the novel to know about her reaction to his death. Another example was the moments when the reader goes through the final part of the novel to know about the drowning of the ship and the death of the crew; except Morgan, while Rosa did not know about these details till Morgan retuned to New York and told her about them. All these instances of dramatic irony make the reader know something before another character knows about it and therefore they make the reader continue reading so as to know the reaction of that character to the events which he/she was not knowing. It becomes a technique of engaging the reader in continuous reading.

As it is said earlier, the language of the narration is simple and lucid. It is neither complex nor allusive. Generally, the novel

'The Legendary Whale' is written in simple communicative language. The narrative dialogues employed in the novel are easy and interesting to read and understand and therefore they urge the reader to continue reading without any linguistic complexity or ambiguity. They are polished and characterized with clarity. The language of the texts is descriptive in its nature and enables the reader to imagine the setting, scene and the characters as portrayed by the narration. There is no awkwardness, inconsistency or ambiguity in the narrative expressions. This made the narrative text very intimate and easy to understand. The simple style of writing makes the reader engaged in reading and creates a sense of intimacy and desire to know what is next. The narrator imparts a feeling of simplicity and easiness in narration and richness of the meaning that help the reader feel at ease with the style of narration and probe the hidden menaings. The communicative style of the narration makes the reader get engaged in what the narrator transfers of the speeches of the characters. Though the language of the novel is full of direct speech between characters who are familiar with each other, it does not have colloquialism or informalities. It used appropriate vocabulary, phrase, grammar and punctuation to phrase the direct speech between characters. Being an academic person, it seems that the novelist wanted to make his novel a text of education for learners of English as a foreign language. Therefore, he mixed between the creation of an imaginative language that attracts young learners to make it a text for enjoying and creatively

phrasing a formal language that fosters the learning of the language itself.

Although the narrative dialogues are simple and straight forward, but they carry condensed meanings that reveal the situation and the mood of character, his motives, feelings, emotions and actions. It means that the narration did not function as a concise vehicle to pass imaginative discourse or a place to dump factual information, rather, it contains a lot of meanings within its layers. It is also loaded with unspoken words, undeclared motives and manifestation of psychic conflicts within and with the outside world. It supported the spoken words of the character, gave clues to the unspoken words, anchored the reader in the situation, created the atmosphere of the novel and described the details of the scene. Sometimes, the details and information come as a by-product of the conflict and tension that arise as a result of the narrative dialogue or unspoken words which express the motives of the characters, hint at the theme of the novel and express what is not expressed. As the novel moves forward, the narrator reveals what the narrative dialogue may conceal and thus the narration contributes to the enrichment of the theme of the novel without being in the form of lengthy, dialogues, comments, information or scene-descriptions that take the narration out of its main situational purpose. In addition to the written narration, there are always internal dialogues that express what is not expressed in the written dialogue. It means that the narration in the novel does not only tell the reader about

what has been said, but also it gives a lot of clues about what is left unsaid and what is going to happen. The novelist made his phrasing and statements rich with not only descriptions and direct meanings, but also with unsaid meanings that force the reader to reflect, think and establish his own anticipation and judgement. This way of narration became the playing field of the narrator and reflected how characters interact verbally and non-verbally. The reader becomes curious and turns to the following page to know more about characters. Hence, the novelist created a world that unfolds before the reader's eyes and mind as he continues reading the novel. It means that the apparent simplicity does not mean that the language is devoid of suggestive, deep or symbolic meaning. In fact, this simple narrative style of the novel makes it necessary to read it carefully because the detailed knowledge of the novelist about the sea and the description of nature are rich in meaning and bear a lot of information and consequently such a narrative style expands the scope of the reader's view and makes him dive deep within the texts that may be loaded with layers of underlying meanings that make the reader develop more thinking about characters, theme and philosophy of the novel. These multilayered meanings within the texts of the narration build up suspense, anticipation and make the reader continue reading the novel to see the coming events. For example, chapter one opens with the introduction of Jim, Rosa, Morgan, Systen, Taigo, Sikes, gives the hint of a finishing stock of fish and whale's oil and it tells the reader about the

preparation for a fishing and whaling journey and thus it prepares the reader for an expected sea-journey with its own events. It means that the limited stock of fish and whale's oil in the market impacted the main characters' decision-making process and created logical reason for further action in the novel in the form of the necessity of going for a fishing and whaling journey. This simple beginning of the story makes the reader develop a lot of expectations. It initiates the narrative thread and makes the reader eager for what is going to happen next on the high seas. Moreover, the apparent simplicity of the discourse and language of the narration has also some measures of roughness and expresses the seriousness of the situations and conflicts between characters. This makes the reader feel that the narrative style in the story is a wonderful literary creation and part of a larger tradition of storytelling.

The novelist effectively developed his narrative style and created a narrative thread which, closely, initiated minor relevant stories that are, strongly, linked with each other up without giving any room for any element of interruption, break, shattering, unrelated issues, shift of subject or digression to intrude into the narrative process. In the first chapter, the scene of the novel shifts from home to the fish market, in the second chapter scene shifts to the inn and then the narration opens the reader to the sea-journey. These shifts of scenes, throughout the novel are logical, natural and smooth and there is no any sign of illogical shift of narration throughout the novel. It means that the

narrator was, smoothly, shifting his narration to cover details of the story on-shore to off-shore, among characters, whales' movements, sea-setting, the passing by ships, the battles against Tylo Frip, etc. As Jim was shifting between frustration and hope in his quest to find Tylo Frip and kill it, this created tension, suspense and anticipation in the novel. At some point, he was expecting that he would not be able to meet the orca whale and this made him seek information about it from a sea-life scientist and from the captains of the passing-by ships. He brought also spy-glass to monitor the sea-escape and lured some sailors with the gold-coins to make them watch the sea and detect Tylo Frip. The narration introduced short stories narrated by the captains of the ships. They were not monotonous because they created anticipation and made the reader also continue reading the novel as if the reader himself is in an appointment with Tylo Frip. The stories gave more information about Tylo Frip and became extension of the main story. They also built-up Jim's further reactive attitude towards Tylo Frip, instigated further ideas in his mind, introduced new characters, probed their positions towards Jim's revenge-task, gave variety within the same theme and consequently they contributed in the development of the narration. Therefore, the narration has never been boring or monotonous because it was full of events and actions that pour into the mainstream of the story. The incident of fighting between Jim and Rosa and the stories about the confrontations with Tylo Frip which were conveyed through the tongues of

captains of the hunting-ships are in the form of stories that are within the same main stream of the narration and the major theme of the novel. In other words, they gave variety to narration, enriched the main theme and remained relevant to it because the subject matter of the stories of the captains of those passing-by ships was about Tylo Frip, too. In other words, in spite of the existence of what can be called stories within a story, there is no sense of digression, unrelated issue, shift of subject, break, shattering, jarring, confusion or a sense of being cut-off from the main theme of the novel. The narrative dialogues, comments, evaluation, projection of characters' feelings, emotions, attitudes, actions, reactions, Tylo Frip's actions and thoughts, all, were carefully managed in such a way that made the reader go through the lines of the novel without experiencing any jarring, confusion, jerk or zigzag in the course of narration. Therefore, throughout the novel, the narration sounded natural and presented the main theme of the novel without drifting away from it and hence it fostered the plot.

The narration built up anticipation and suspense by employing many narrative techniques. For example, the unknown sailor who was speaking behind the door with Jim was not, initially, known by Morgan. He took him to be a 'stranger'. He passed by the kitchen and heard the speaker says to Jim, "Yes, Fritz, you are right. You must kill it", "You have to obey your wife's orders. Am I right?" Morgan heard him going to the extent of instigating Jim to kill anyone who opposes him in his effort to

kill Tylo Frip. He says, "If anyone tries to stop you, you can use your pistol and silence him." The reader, like Morgan, wanted to know who that stranger was. Morgan found him to be nobody, but Boxtel. Moreover, the strange voice of which source was not known by the sailors of Lingnerland cost them a sailor who jumped into the sea to know what it is, but he disappeared. It was considered by some sailors to be a voice of a ghost. However, the dramatic irony is that, later on, they came to know that the source of the voice was Tylo Frip itself.

The narration, whether textual or illustrative, is also colored by the description of what is going on in the scene. Right from the beginning, the narration reflects the close bond between Jim and Rosa in their house and characters and their surroundings. It introduces the setting of the novel. It is vividly descriptive and gives a detailed picture of the surrounding setting. It painted a vivid picture of the world of the story with its beach, sea-escape and the ocean at large, urban setting with its fish market and inn where seamen meet. It is the setting which is the stage on which events take place. It incorporated and employed a vivid description of the major setting of the novel; the sea, to grip the interest of the reader. The sea is not only a major setting, but also a recurrent image. From the narration and the dialogues of the characters, the reader can easily imagine and feel, as well, the sea-escape, the approaching wind, the lightening, the lashing of the heavy rains, the heights of the huge waves, the gushing of water, the hitting of waves on the sides of

the ship, the mist and the sound of the piercing of spears into the bodies of the whales. It means that the narrative dialogue utilized the sensory details of the surrounding to convey the atmosphere and mood of the scene and the actions of the characters.

The narration maintained its coherence. There was a coherent chain of events. As the narration was developing the theme through the sayings, actions and events which are performed by the characters, it, successfully, avoided unnecessary repetitions except those which reflect the mood and emotions of the characters, their established psychic tendencies and their actions during practicing their hunting and whaling skills. The narration of the chain of events created an inner drama that reflects revenge and its psychological implications not only on Jim, but also on all other characters. Hence, through this coherent narration, the novelist pushed the narration forward and at the same time he, successfully, fostered the structure of the novel and developed its thematic relevance. The coherent chain of events made the narration abide by the chronological sequence of events and time which move ahead in a logical and straightforward manner. In other words, the story has a narrative mode that observes the factor of timeline and place. The narration puts the reader in the true atmosphere of its time. The time of the events of the novel has been taken back into a time in the past when people were depending on whale's oil to lit up their lamps. The novelist navigated the factor of time effectively and the sequence of events in time is logical. It means that the

traditional mode regarding time, place and action has been observed and it has never been violated or disrupted. The narrative dialogue in the novel does not arise in vacuum, rather, it grounds the reader in the time and place of the events and projects the atmosphere of the setting in which actions are taking place. As far as the sequence of the chain of events in time are concerned, the events of the story start on a Thursday at four p.m. when Jim was speaking to Rosa about the prosperity which he achieved from selling fish and whales' oil and that the stock of fish and whale's oil was about to run out of stock and therefore he was intending to organize a fishing and whaling journey to supply the market with fish and whale's oil. Morgan also entered and informed Jim that he has to go to the fish market and sell the remaining fish and whale's oil and expressed the necessity to go for a fishing and whaling journey. Jim informs him that they will go for a fishing and whaling journey on Sunday. The arrangements for the journey started on Friday. Jim, Morgan and Sikes went to the ship to prepare for the journey. Then, after everything was arranged, Jim, Sikes and Morgan came home on Saturday night to sleep and then join the crew on Sunday morning. Thus, the time moves in a logical manner. Within the same chapter, the narration may be divided by the use of slashes to mark the change of the scene or the shift of time or place. Whenever this happens, the shift of time and place is convincing even if it is not indicated directly. After departure, the time of the novel did not give names of the days during the first journey as

it lasted for a short period before returning after Sikes' death. However, the novel again started giving the details of the days of the week when Jim, on a Tuesday, decided to arrange for a second journey of which time was fixed to be on Friday. The second journey started on Friday, but nobody saw Jim till the following Monday. Then, the novelist made the reader acquainted with the time that proceeds forward through expressions such as "six days later", "Seven days later", "On the following day", etc. This indicates that the detailed timing of the narration became in the form of a rhythm and the aim of the novelist was to make the reader read a novel which has an organized timing whether it is directly indicated or suggested through expressions such as 'two days later', etc. Thus, the narration of the novel follows a chronology of time which is sequenced in a logical manner. It moves forward in a chronological fashion and the reader is not delinked from a logical sequence of time. Every event happens after the preceding one. Though there are some elements of flashforwards and flashback- wards, the dominant mode of narration moves in a single straight line with little flashback as that when Jim remembers his son or his wife's condition to him, but the narration continues to push the straight line of the chronology of the time and the order of events forward.

Some parts of the narration are done in prose form while some other parts are given in quoted dialogue form which are in different persons. Using the quoted speech and mixing it with

description, comments, etc., indicate a kind of a narrative style that reveals characters, events, setting, etc. This mix of the narrative style makes it in the form of a descriptive and a moving drama, pushes the narration forward and adds variety to it. As a whole, the narration gave us a story of Jim versus Tylo Frip and in between, it has enriched itself with many events, actions, descriptions, stories and comments. The narrative threads keep the reader engaged and interested in reading till the end. The narration became a voice of characters whose dialogues were not in the form of aimless, happy or small talk, but they were serious and created the drama of the novel. In other words, characters' dialogues created tension, led to serious actions and released intensive meanings. It is this type of tension which was a source of conflicting motives among characters that created actions and made the reader continue to read the novel. These conflicting motives were created through illustrations, spoken and unspoken mode of narration that reflected different opinions and hidden agendas. This made the narration dynamic and varied, nevertheless, it contributed to the creation of a cohesive novel.

The narrator gives an expansive dimension to the narration. All the threads of narration are in his hands. The main thread of narration springs from the narrator's hearing the dialogues between characters, conveying them to the reader, commenting, observing, describing actions, depicting emotions, feelings and attitudes of the characters and describing the setting and atmosphere which surround them. It means that the main

thread of the narration depends on the narrator who hovers, like a bird which flies over the ships and characters, reports their dialogues and actions, conveys their talks, observes and describes their feelings, emotions, attitudes and comments on them. In other words, the narrator was like a drone above the events and actions. He turned to be a reliable commentator; a voice, and this enabled him to acquire a bird's-eye-view or a drone's camera that monitors, describes and conveys the whole story; its dialogues, events, actions, etc. In other words, in this whole process of narration, the narrator went deep into the minds and hearts of characters, including Tylo Frip, to tell the reader the story. The narrator sometimes adopted close third person narration to focus on and expose the working of the mind of Jim, Rosa, other major characters and their actions. Through such a narrative focus, the narrator revealed the innermost of the major characters and the consequences of their motives and actions. He depicted the actions and events that take place, showed the heated arguments between characters, depicted characters' actions, reactions, thoughts, feelings, emotions and motives and thus, he projected different ways of seeing the world, mirrored the mindset of the characters, revealed their merits, limitations, exposed their weakness and enabled the reader to have more understanding of the progress of the novel and the development of its theme.

The narrative technique, effectively, shed light on the major characters and thus it gave the reader a wider angle to look

at them and get more information about them. Thus, the narration became informative, gave details about characters; their motives, emotions and feelings and enabled the reader to enter into the minds of different characters and know the sources and aspects of their motives and the reasons behind their confrontation with Tylo Frip and with each other. The narration enabled the reader to be everywhere, see everything and observe actions and working minds of various characters. It gave the reader the ability to probe deep into the character's feelings, thoughts, emotions and motives and enabled him to have a closer and deeper idea about the experience of the main characters.

The narration in general may be characterized with shortness and conciseness, however, it never relegates the required details that drive the course of the narration up to the end. The condensed, short and concise texts of narration give minute details of the actions, reactions, attitudes, emotions, feelings and motives of characters. They draw the relation between characters, expose the apparent and latent conflict between them and thus they reveal the type of relations that link them with each other. They mention every detail of the movements and actions of the characters, add to the color and richness of the theme and keep the narration moving forward. The novelist puts the right words in the mouth of each character, therefore, there is no need to make the character get involved in lengthy expressions and descriptions, nevertheless, their dialogue nurse hidden meaning because there are conflicts which

are nourished by the contradicting motives, agenda, plans, etc. of the characters. The dialogues between characters became one of the most interesting parts of the novel. They are condensed and bear layers of meanings. As the narration exposed the characters and the working of their minds, it enabled the reader to have a close look into the personality of each character and know a lot about him. The statements uttered by various characters; quoted and conveyed by the narrator, revealed their personalities, tendencies, attitudes and emotions. In this regard, the style of wordings and the concise sentences uttered by characters played a major role to describe the personality of the character who utters them.

The narration employed direct dialogues, which are in the form of an exchange of conversations among characters, by using the exact words of the characters and putting them between quotation marks. The direct dialogue of the character was put into inverted commas. It employed them as a source of narration along with comments and description from the narrator. The novelist phrased interesting narrative dialogues in an effective linguistic manner. He combined between quoted dialogues and open text narration to project the setting and depict the mood, feeling, emotion and motive of the characters and hence he developed his characters and exposed the working of their mind, their psychic tendencies and motives. The part of the narration which is in the form of dialogues revealed all aspects of the characters, their attitudes towards each other, their conflicts,

motives, feelings, emotions and psychic build up. It projects the actions and reaction of the characters, gets hold of the reader's attention and forces him to continue reading the novel. The dialogues incited actions and gave rise to new events and thus they moved the narration forward and provided the reader with new information about characters and the way they act, react, agree, disagree, conflict with each other, confront each other and build their attitude towards Jim and Tylo Frip and in this way the narration moved forward till the end of the novel. This created a smooth narration that shifts between various moods, feelings, emotions and attitudes, exposes the motives and contributes to the development of the plot and theme of the novel. Through conveying the dialogues of each character, the narrator projected each character individually and independent of each other. The way the characters speak gave a lot of information about their personality and revealed the nature of their inner and outer relationship. The reader comes to know about what drives the character through the character's sayings. The narrator zoomed in and out towards various characters by allowing the reader to know their inner personality through their sayings and actions. He entered into the minds of the characters and exposed, to the reader, the ways of their thinking and reactions which manifested themselves in their sayings. Therefore, the reader comes to know who is overwhelmed by the motive of revenge, who is obstinate and stubborn, who is having cunning and instigating plans, who is sincere and noble, who is swept by Jim's revenging

propaganda, who is opponent of Jim, who is acting on instincts, who is controlled by greed, etc. It means that through the dialogues of characters, the narrator gave the reader a full information about them and illuminated the non-human character; Tylo Frip, too. At some points, the reader is left uncertain about what some other characters are thinking about and why they are acting in the way they act. Boxtel was a clear example of such an instance. This is a gap in revealing the motives of a character and allowing the reader to guess or think about them. A close reading of those dialogues gives an exciting experience and tells the reader about the author's deep understanding of human psychology, human nature and human relations. Hence, the narration continued to build interest in the reader and heighten his suspense therefore the reader continues to read the novel without halting.

In the process of phrasing dialogues, there was an effective balance between projecting a realistic speech and ensuring the readability of the texts which are subjected to suitable punctuations, capitalizations, attributes and line-breaks. The narration used dialogue-tags to break up the dialogue in such a way that makes it easy for the reader to know, easily, who is speaking and to whom he is speaking. The dialogue before the dialogue-tag starts with an uppercase while the dialogue-tag starts with a lowercase. When the dialogue-tag comes before the dialogue, it starts with an uppercase and ends with a comma while the dialogue itself continues to start with an uppercase. All

this shows that though the novelist was studying in Arabic medium school and English language was only a single subject in the syllabus, he was well-acquainted with the grammar of English language, possessed an excellent control over it and over the ways of phrasing a language that has literary load. It indicates that he was in love with English language at home that is why he was distinct in English language to a level which might have not been reached by his classmates and even by his teachers at the school level.

The novelist employed interesting and natural dialogues to build up his narration and make it deeply expressive and suggestive, too. The narration exhibited instances of interrupted dialogues which express the contrast between the speakers and their reaction and opposition to what the other speaker has already said. It reflected the shifting-tone between characters and the style of the narration in projecting what is not uttered. It displayed the multidimensional picture which a language can project. The language of the narration projected the attitudes and tendencies of the characters and reflected the tone in which the characters speak and the content of their utterances. For example, the tone of Jim's dialogue was characterized with seriousness, nervousness, obstinacy and excessive obsession with taking revenge while the tone of Morgan was calm and protective to Jim from Jim's own destructive tendencies. The tone of Boxtel was that of inciting, cunningness and aggressiveness. The tones expressed the psychic structure of each character and depicted

what he is doing and what is happening. Thus, the narration is polished and characterized with relevance, impact, realism, naturalism and deep understanding of human psychology. It is far away from incorporating any absurdity, clinches or stereotypes. It does not have any redundancy nor does it lead to any sense of dullness, rather, it is interesting, expressive and suggestive.

The narrator presented the dialogues of the characters and added his own description of the characters through the attributes that included words such as angrily, calmly, etc. It means that the emotion of the character is articulated through words and actions. Thus, the narration served the narrative purpose of characterization and became not only easy to understand, but also rich and expressive with the details about characters presented through the adverbs such as sadly, angrily, calmly, etc., that project the moods, feelings, emotions and reactions of the character. The narrative dialogue of each character was apt and reflected his personality, mood, tendencies and psychic structure. The reader can easily identify the dialogue uttered by Jim which is characterized with anger, bitterness and sense of revenge before he reaches the dialogue-tag or the attribute at the end of the dialogue. The adverbs point to the intensity of the emotions and clarity as well as the expressiveness of the meaning which are already expressed in the dialogue. The novelist's aim was to describe the reactions of the characters to each other and to the arising situations. The narration became credible and realistic

therefore the reader gets immersed in the world of the story and minds of the characters. There is no bias in the narrator's attitudes towards any characters despite those descriptive adverbs such as 'angrily', etc. The narrator watched the characters and revealed a varying degree of knowledge about them judiciously. Each dialogue possesses what makes the reader eager to see what the other character said and how his or her reaction was. The narrative dialogues provided, both, the context and the exposition of the character. They indicate that the speakers are not secretive or reserved, but outcoming and frank. Through such a narrative dialogue, the novelist exposed the personalities of the characters. The narration becomes a source of exposing the mind of the main character and the role of other characters in dealing with and reacting to that character and other characters. Some characters like Jim, Boxtel, Fagin, Sapt, etc., and their sayings drive the story forward and give its elements of suspension, anticipation, tension, conflict, etc. The reader is given an ample chance to have a peek into the minds of those main characters through their sayings to know what they were planning to say even before they say. Though the narrator used words such as 'angrily', calmly, sadly, etc. to describe the sayings of some characters and project their moods, emotions, and feelings, he left the matter of establishing the final judgment about each character to the reader.

The novelist created the unnamed narrator who exists at the background to be his mouthpiece. For doing so, he made the

narrator, critically, handle Jim, Rose, Sikes and Boxtel who got obsessed with taking revenge against an instinctive force of nature while Jim and Boxtel confronted whoever opposes them. As we will see later on, the narrator can be considered as the novelist's mouthpiece because he was presenting the novelist's thoughts, visions and attitudes. Through an effective narrative technique, the novelist dramatized his knowledge of sea-life and the minute details about the behaviors of characters and sea-animals and produced a novel which is wonderful not only in its narrative style and dramatic content, but also has informative characteristics. The narration is not only informative, but also shows that the narrator is acquainted with what was going on in the mind of Tylo Frip. He says, "The whale made cracklings to the direction of the body. Orca whales usually do that to locate their preys. The cracklings dashed against Morgan and their echo returned to Tylo's ears. It discovered that the body was of human being and it located its position, too. It got very furious and rushed to attack him. It swam with the speed of fifty-five kilometers an hour and reached the floating wood." The way the narrator handled Tylo Frip indicates that the whale is the hero of the novel as we will see later on.

By giving color to all aspects of the narration, the narrator successfully flags the emotional and thematic stakes of the novel. The novelist has sharpened his creative writing skill and created a narration which is well-crafted, well-phrased and played a great role in exposing characters, describing scenes and reflecting the

philosophy behind the theme of the novel. Through this narrative technique, the novelist generated ideas that gave rise to events, actions and conflict and thus fostered the process of the development of the plot and enhancing the theme of the novel.

Hence, the narrative technique of the novel is wonderful. It is successful, as well, in presenting the details of the story effectively and highlighting the literary characteristics of the novel. Through this effective narrative technique, the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', became rich, informative, attractive, dramatic and suggestive. The novelist adopted narrative strategies which communicate the information to the reader, arrest his attention, arouse his curiosity and force him to carry on reading the novel to know what is coming ahead. Throughout the narration, the reader does not feel any sense of boredom, rather, he continues to read the novel with interest and without halting. The narrator pushed the narration forward and at the same time he, successfully, fostered the plot structure and projected its theme effectively. He steered the narration in such a way that it successfully gave the message of the novel and made the reader abhor revenge and detest harming nature. Artistically and thematically, the narrator explained to the reader that man should not be guided by negative motives and nature must not be exploited nor must it be ill-treated. The final goal is that the novelist wanted to interact with the reader who is in dire need for preserving nature and protecting it.

The Unnamed Narrator: The Main Mouthpiece of the Novelist

It can be said that the novel is 'novel' in its philosophical ideas as it is an artistic depiction of the philosophy of the novelist towards nature. The course of narration shows that the novelist has a deep concern about nature and its valuable treasures, therefore, he selected a peculiar way of narrating the story, detached himself, created the unnamed narrator, made him exists at the background, handed over the task of narration to him and through him, he presented his thoughts, visions, attitudes and philosophy and considered this way of narration as a suitable technique through which he can express his views that call for the protection of nature and its components. He employed the unnamed narrator who can be considered as the novelist himself as he represented the novelist's convictions and present them literarily.

The novelist could not find a character from among those in the novel who can sincerely represent his views about nature, except the unnamed narrator. Even Morgan, the noble and sincere man, who objected to Jim's confrontation with Tylo Frip and was finally the only one who reached the city safely, was not considered to be suitable or qualified enough to represent the novelist's views about nature as if the novelist wanted to call for a review of the whole fishing and whaling industry of which Morgan was a part and continued to be a part of. Moreover,

Morgan may be wise, but he was weak and incapable of confronting Jim through a level of confrontation that his wisdom permits. Even Fagin and Sapt, despite their boldness, were not capable to represent the whole vision of the novelist. Therefore, though, the unnamed narrator was not a character in the novel and was just at the background, the novelist employed him to highlight the good qualities in Fagin, Sapt and Morgan and depict the novelist's views about the characters whose impulsive tendencies were not only to exploit nature, but also to act aggressively against it. The role of the unnamed narrator was essential in the novel and without that role, the novelist would have not been able to possess a true mouthpiece, serve nature or do justice to its cause in an artistic manner. Thus, the unnamed narrator represents Ali's vision about nature and its valuable assets, treasures and forces and the way human beings should deal with them. He effectively played the role of the mouthpiece of the novelist and depicted the fact that the novelist is an environmentalist who has a deep desire to protect human being from the human being himself. He is a lover of nature and a defender of its treasures. Thus, the novel is an expression of personal conviction which is based on the idea that nature must be protected. Through the narrator, the novelist attacked those who misuse of natural resources and criticized the way human beings behave with the forces of nature and thus the narrator reflected the novelist's vision.

The narrator did not only attract the attention of the reader, but also presented the vision of the novelist and became his masterpiece. He, artistically, projected the novelist's views and reflected his anger on those who misbehave with nature, confront its valuable forces and, recklessly, try to extinguish them. It is through the narrator's perspective that the reader does not only get the narrative flow or the theme of the novel, but also knows about the novelist's point of view. Through the narrator, the novelist presented the main stream of his vision about how man should act and interact with nature. Thus, the narrator is the voice and the viewpoint of the novelist. He represents the novelist general knowledge about nature because at many points, he gives details which project the novelist's knowledge about sea-life. It is mainly through the narrator that the reader comes to know that the novelist is well-acquainted with the behavior of various types of whales, particularly, the orca whales.

The narration did not present the course of the narration as a thinly disguised philosophy of the novelist which reveals only some aspects of his views about life in general and nature in particular, but, in fact, it presented the novel in such a way that made it a direct reflection of the philosophy of the novelist, particularly, when it is critically handled at the background of the novelist's knowledge about nature, his love for its treasures and his artistic inclinations that depict nature and remain attached to it. In this novel, the novelist's knowledge about nature and his

love for it have been fictionalized and rendered imaginatively and the narrator played a great role in doing so.

The narrator stands for many aspects of the author's convictions and opinions about the characters of the novel. His attitude towards those who exploit nature and misbehave with it seems to be identical to that of the novelist. It was of criticism and condemnation. This can be confirmed by many clues which are evident in the novel and the literary as well as the artistic inclination and achievements of the novelist himself. The narrator, critically, handled Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Boxtel who got obsessed with taking revenge against an innocent and instinctive force of nature. It means that the novelist employed the narrator to reflect his own convictions about nature and the necessity of reacting positively towards it. It is through the narrator's perspective that the reader comes to know about the novelist's point of view.

In this novel, there is a straightforward pouring of the author's philosophy about nature through the unnamed narrator. It can be said that the novelist is positioned within the narrator or vice versa. The novelist made the narrator his alter-ego in order to present his vision about nature, environment and human relation with them. He put himself in the narrator and got identified with him. He created the unnamed narrator to pour out himself through him and reflect ideas about the importance of protecting nature against exploitation and reckless acts of vengeance against its treasures. The attitude, mind and heart of

the novelist can be, easily, discerned from the comments of the narrator, his language, from the dialogues of the characters and the way they have been projected. The admiration of the narrator to the whale and calling it 'The Legendary Whale' is a clear sign of his sympathy with it and this represents the novelist's admiration for 'The Legendary Whale' and his sympathy with it. The novelist adopted the admiring naming of the narrator to Tylo Frip as 'The Legendary Whale' and made it the title of his novel. This shows that the novelist himself was admiring the whale; its strength, intelligence and self-defense strategies and techniques.

The novelist offered many clues which confirm the fact that the narrator is a reflector of his philosophy. Through the narrator, the novelist exposed the evil of getting involved in taking revenge in general and taking it against the forces of nature in particular. The narrator depicted the novelist abhorrence of murdering and criminality. Thus, the novel, as narrated by the narrator, is an embodiment of Ali's vision of human relations and taste and flavor of nature and how it should be allowed to manage itself in such a way that preserves its treasures.

The novelist made all the characters, including Jim himself, victims of Tylo Frip in one way or another, but he left Morgan to survive so as to show that nature's anger will never extinguish all human beings. Morgan was always against killing Tylo Frip. The author's view is that sea or land animals may display their instincts which may appear to be cruel to man, but

still, human beings must be compassionate to them as they also will display the compassionate characteristics as it has been projected while Morgan was sitting on the floating wood when Tylo Frip protected him until he as rescued by Bill's ship. The narrators' projection of Morgan's escape of death and his return to the sea along with the two sons of Jim seems to shows that the novelist is in favor of reasonable exploitation of nature in such a way that makes people on land enjoy what the sea can give them, but he is against any exploitation of nature or confrontation with its forces which may act instinctively and in the course of doing so they may harm people. Thus, the narrator stands for the representation of the novelist's anger towards those who act, aggressively, against nature and its forces. The comments and attitudes of the narrator are based on the novelist's most intimate convictions that defend nature and its treasures. The narrator at the end of the novel showed the reader how those who confronted nature and its instincts got what they deserve, but in the process of getting what they deserve, they harmed many innocent people who were with them.

Till the end of the novel, the language of narration suggests for the protection of nature. Through the tongue of the narrator, the novelist wanted to tell the reader that nature will continue to implicate human beings with its own instincts in the form of direct attack by wild life whether land-beasts or sea-beasts, rains, cyclones, etc., but human beings must realize that nature never does this intentionally. As far as the land-beasts or

sea-beasts are concerned, they act naturally and instinctively and therefore human beings should understand this is nature's law and he should accept it otherwise they will enter into endless confrontations with the forces of nature and human beings will never come out triumphant from such confrontations and even if they come out triumphant, it will be at the cost of the complete extinction of those wonderful treasures of nature. The narrator showed how wise captains avoided confrontation with Tylo Frip and therefore returned safely to New York while Jim determined to confront Tylo Frip, faced his doom and harmed others who were with him. Hence, the unnamed narrator, effectively, reflected the main message of the novel, the philosophy of the novelist and his anger against what has affected nature due to human recklessness and thus he became the mouthpiece and the real representative of the novelist's vision and philosophy.

The Setting, Images and Symbols in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

Though the setting of a story is, usually, presented through its exposition, the exposition in this novel does not represent the major setting because it has a short urban background at the beginning; when Jim and Rosa were talking at home at the opening of the first chapter and when Jim and Morgan were working in the fish-market and then went to the inn to recruit fishermen and whalers. There is another urban background when Jim came back to New York in the wake of the death of Sikes, quarreled with Rosa and both of them were taken to the police station. There is another urban background, at the end of the novel, when Morgan returned to New York in the wake of the destruction of Lingnerland and the death of sailors including Jim. Although these short urban settings are very limited, but they have their general relevance to the dominant and major setting; sea-background, and the theme of the novel.

The novel begins in Jim's house near the beach of New York. Then, it shifts to a fish-market to show Jim and Morgan selling off the remaining fish and whale's oil. Again, it shifts to an inn in which Jim and Morgan try to recruit sailors for the planned fishing and whaling journey. Then, again it returns to the house of Jim to pass the night before going the ship; Lingnerland, to make the final preparations for departure. The reader is, then,

taken to the port from where a ship; Lingnerland, sailed on Sunday, into the Atlantic Ocean. Then, the sea and the deck of the ship; Lingnerland, became the dominant background and setting of the novel. Thus, the short urban setting which lasted for few days has preceded the major and dominant sea-setting. In other words, the sea-escape setting becomes a major background of the novel and most of the narration of the novel is set against the background of the wide and stretched sea-escape.

The handling of the sea-setting with its details indicates the fact that the novelist is a keen observer of nature, particularly, the nature with a sea-background. He gave much attention to the details of the sea and sea-life and made them the major background of the novel. It shows that he is a lover of sea-life and has intimate relation with it and its treasures. He gave a vivid, graphic and minute description of sea-escape where the reader comes through a pictorial and sensuous description of the sea with its sunny and hot weather, winds, waves, clouds, thunder, lightning, rains, mist, calmness and clarity of its sky. A text in the novel says, "The wind blew, violently, and the ship staggered, strongly. Huge waves hit the ship. The sky became darker and then, it started raining, heavily." They have their own effects on Jim who, under the influence of anger against Tylo Frip, personifies them. He does not consider them to be hinderances in his way to fight and kill Tylo Frip. Another text states, "As it was still raining heavily, the men couldn't see the whales properly. Moreover, huge waves prevented the small boats from sailing

smoothly. Suddenly, a lightning lit the world around the crew. Thunder was loud and terrible." This vivid, sensuous and graphic description of sea-escape characterized the pictorial richness of the major background of the novel. The descriptive language appeals to reader's senses and captivates them. It makes all senses of the reader in touch with the details of the sea-setting and sea-life. The reader feels the striking scenery of the sea-escape when it is cloudy, stormy, wavey, rainy, misty, calm and clear. He feels that the setting of the sea-background has been incarnated before him. The description of sea-escape gives color to narration, offers a graphic pictorial description to the texts, establishes the mood of the reader about the situation and makes the setting remain, for a long time, vivid in his memory. It becomes an unforgettable setting that sticks to the mind of the reader permanently and shows that the novelist is a keen observer of nature and a lover of the sea-escape. Many details of the nature such as the dark sky, the clouds, the lightening, the rain, the wind and the mist do not remain as images only. Their recurrence makes them acquire symbolic significance. They stand for a lurking danger which was approaching and depict the novelist's skill in playing with the language and setting, sensuously, pictorially and vividly, to project the details of major background of the novel and give them deeper meanings.

The Sea: Symbolic Dimensions

The clearest and most dominant image in the novel is the sea. It was evoked right from the beginning of the novel and remained one of the major images till the end. The initial lines of the novel in which Jim expressed his happiness because of the wealth which he acquired from selling fish and whale's oil, evoke the image of the sea in the mind of the reader, the role it played and it is going to play in the novel. In fact, the sea physically or tacitly is with the reader throughout the novel. Even when the reader comes across the short urban background of the novel, the sea-setting remains hanged in the anticipation of the reader who realized that it is going to play a major role in being a major background for the major actions in the novel. The vivid and graphic description of the sea-escape made the language of the novel possess visual, pictorial and descriptive qualities. Speaking about Sikes' enjoyment of his presence on the ship his watching of nature around him, the narrator says, "He watched sea birds which were flying over the ship and diving to hunt fish." This text shows that the novelist has the skill to use the language effectively and pictorially and make the reader read something and at the same time see, hear and taste it, too. The descriptive qualities of the language suggested the dominant atmosphere and marked out the setting in a clear, vivid and pictorial manner.

However, the description of the sea does not remain merely scenic. It adds depth to the meaning of the novel and

gives it a symbolic dimension. In other words, the sea in this novel is not just an object of nature or a static background that may turn to be monotonous. It acquired a symbolic significance and quality that increased the interest of the reader in it. Like, Tylo Frip, the sea possessed its own identity. With its changing face between calmness and fury, high waves, gushing water fishing, fishing, whaling and sailing ships, the sea becomes a strong factor that exposes the reacting persona of people to the behavior of natural life. It has a great role in determining the fate of humanity, molding the unmolded, disciplining the undisciplined and extinguishing the rebellious. It is a place of many battles between the forces of exploiting nature and the forces that act instinctively for their own survival and self-defense. It is the place where man and nature either coexist or liquidate their accounts and finalize their confrontations which result in either victory or defeat.

The description of the sea and the surrounding nature sometimes coincides with what is going to happen or what is going on among the characters of the novel. The dark clouds on the horizon suggests an approaching of a lurking danger that threatens the lives of sailors, but Jim was not taking the matter seriously. He was belittling nature and its forces and even ridiculing them. Many times, he ridiculed the approaching wind, but it appeared later on that he and his sailors were weak in front of natural forces. The rough sea, the dark sky, the blowing wind, the cold weather and the strong lightning, the powerful thunder,

the high waves that dash against the body of the ship, the heavy rains, the rough sea, etc., all, were standing for what was going on between characters in the form of conflicts and clashes. While Jim was opposing wasting energies in fishing and hunting whales and was in favor of devoting sailors' energies to search for and kill Tylo Frip, the sailors were in favor of fishing and whaling for pocket-money. It means that the opposing views of characters were coinciding with the manifestations of the gloomy and rough nature around the sailors. Thus, the turmoil of nature was reflecting the conflicting views of those who were onboard of the ship; Lingnerland. The sea seems to become a battleground for settling the accounts between characters on the one hand and between human beings and nature on the other hand. This conflicting atmosphere coincided with dark clouds, strong wind, lightning and powerful thunder, all, acquired suggestive significance and dimension that depict the motives, moods and interests of characters. They stand for an approaching of a lurking danger that will harm the ship and the sailors, too.

The sea is the main structural element of the novel which gives the novel its structural unity. It is a unifying symbol that has philosophical characteristics and dimensions. Physically, the sea provided a vivid image in the form of the sea-escape, waves, fishing and whaling ships, etc. It determines the thematic development of the novel because the theme unfolds itself against a dominant background in the form of the sea. Philosophically, the sea stands for the benevolent and destructive

aspects of nature. Jim reaped a lot of boons from the sea and became rich through fishing and whaling, but when he, due to a wrong decision, loses his son in the sea, he opted for a revenging task that made him reap nothing from the sea and its forces except destruction and death while other ships sought the benevolent aspects of the sea and sailed back safely to the coast loaded with what they have taken from the sea. Thus, the sea and its forces acquire a unifying, symbolic and philosophical characteristics and dimensions. They are benevolent to human beings, but they have no mercy on those who transcend their limits and transgress upon their premises. They become, both, the benevolent forces and the killers. They create life and possess power that can destroy it. Many ships were returning to New York though they saw Tylo Frip and it snatched away some of their catch and even killed some sailors, but still they were not deprived of all their catches. Contrarily, Jim and Sikes acted in a reckless manner with Tylo Frip and therefore the sea and its forces showed the reckless man their merciless sides, consequently, many characters paid the price of misbehaving with the sea in general and the forces of nature; Tylo Frip, in particular. It means that the sea cares for its own treasures. It defends and supports them. It is the store of the sources of the livelihood and the store also of wild creatures which can annihilate that livelihood and kill those who try to mess with them. The sea is rich and generous for those who act wisely with it. It is a place for getting fish, whale and whale's oil. It enables

people to become rich, establish fish markets and construct beautiful houses and inns. Jim reaped from the sea, both, a lot of wealth and death, too. It means that the sea stretches the hands of boon to needy people and supports its forces to defend themselves against the reckless human motives. It becomes a symbol of a natural force that puts an end to human recklessness, obstinacy and ill-treatment of its forces and treasures. It makes the aggressors rest into its bottom and become victims of those whom they had confronted. Though it continues to be benevolent with people like Morgan, the captains and the sailors of the passing-by ships who met Jim and advised him not to fight Tylo Frip, it turns to be cruel to those who pursue taking revenge and unnecessarily endanger the life of the sea inmates; Tylo Frip. Systen and Sikes antagonized Tylo Frip, and they got killed by it. Jim started fighting not only Tylo Frip, but also the sea itself as it is the battleground that acts in favor of Tylo Frip as it is its home. However, some of the passing-by ships also met the majesty of sea, observed their limitation, realized their need for sea and therefore they sailed back safely to the shore. Hence, the coexistence between human beings and the sea depends on the way human beings act and interact with the sea and its forces. The sea seems to tell human beings that they have to observe their limits otherwise it has strong forces that are capable of showing that human beings are powerless, weak, fragile and insignificant. The sea is not only a surface on which ships sail or events take place, but it is also a symbol of the fronts of the

battles between man and nature. It stands for the strength of the forces that live in it.

Thus, it can be said that without the sea, there would be no livelihood, no employment and no richness. It is the source of the economic status of sailors. It is the trade builder and the source of boon for those who take their needs from it. The sea sustains the lives of sailors and traders of fish and whale's oil by enabling them to acquire their livelihood from it and at the same time it and its forces are also a trade 'destroyers'. The sea became the symbol of building wealth for people and at the same time the force that is capable of destroying their lives. Wise people like Morgan and Bill benefit from it while 'stupid' people like Jim get destroyed by it. It is the sea which made Jim rich and it is the sea which swallowed Jim and his ship. It is the fish, whale and whale's oil which built the wealth of Jim and it is the whale which killed Sikes and destroyed Jim, his ship and killed his sailors. All these made the sea move from the state of just a static background and mere a setting to a state of possessing a symbolic quality that adds philosophical meaning to the major theme of the novel. Hence, the sea acquires symbolic and philosophical characteristics and dimensions. It is in fact the second major non-human symbol after Tylo Frip. The mighty of Tylo Frip comes from the mighty sea.

Tylo Frip: Symbolic Dimensions

Tylo Frip is a phenomenal and legendary orca whale that is not only a major non-human character in the novel, but also capable of offering symbolic interpretation. It acquires a symbolic dimension from its legendary strength and cleverness and becomes a symbol of the power of nature in general and sea in particular. The character of Tylo Frip haunts whoever reads the novel and then rides the sea or ocean. It is the symbol of indomitable force of nature. Therefore, the novelist, through his narrator, described it as 'the legendary whale' and made it the title of the novel. Tylo Frip is a symbol of the destructive forces of nature and its rebellious aspects against the recklessness of human tendencies which perpetrate a continuous conflict with nature. It stands for the existential relation that binds human beings with the natural forces and challenges which human beings may face in their life and they have to make a choice between either confronting those forces and challenges and getting defeated by them or just getting their instinctive slaps, avoiding them and co-existing with them. Fagin, Sapt, Morgan and many captains of the passing-by ships opted for avoiding confrontation with the forces of nature and co-existed with them while Jim went for confronting them and therefore he paid a heavy price.

Tylo Frip, is a symbol of uncontrollable forces that are, if provoked, capable of causing great damage to lives and properties, but they are also savers and guardians of the innocent

lives. It was portrayed as possessing a mystic power that is capable of producing destructive effects if it is provoked. Jim tried to confront it on its own 'land'; the sea, and kill it, but such a motive proved to be futile and at the end, it destroyed the ship and killed the sailors and Jim himself; except Morgan. It, bravely, fought those who fought it and it was very benevolent with whoever did not fight it. It killed, swallowed and devoured many of those who fought it and guarded the life of Morgan who has never fought it. It means that Tylo Frip is the symbol of natural forces that are capable of becoming, both, good and bad, virtuous and villainous. It represents the fact that nature is an anonymous force and does not have any antagonistic tendencies nor does it create enemies. It simply follows its own natural course of existence, but Jim considered the death of Sikes as a deliberate work perpetrated by Tylo Frip against him, therefore, he launched a confrontation against it. Tylo rip made its best efforts to avoid fighting human beings. The benevolent characteristics of Tylo Frip produced a voice to scare fishermen and make them avoid fighting it. It also avoided fighting human beings by changing its direction. By doing so, Tylo Frip's sole aim was to monitor the behavior of the fishermen and react to it accordingly. It would have left Jim and his men if they had stopped bothering it. The benevolent characteristics of Tylo Frip also made it reluctant to attack Morgan while he was on the floating wood as it has never seen his face among those who fought it. By playing such a wise role, Tylo Frip exchanged

wisdom with Morgan and wanted to teach man that aggression must not be committed and the lives of the innocent people and sea-treasures must be protected. It means that forces of nature do not have any intentional antagonism towards a human being. It is the human being who is antagonizing the forces of nature and consequently paying a heavy cost in the form of his own life and getting deprived of enjoying those beautiful aspects of nature and its treasures.

Tylo Frip stands for the forces of nature that confront reckless human tendencies which indulge in unnecessary revenge. Sike was a victim of the unnecessary insistence on fighting a huge whale that acts instinctively. Jim also became a victim twice as he went awry and allowed Sikes to fight Tylo Frip and he himself rode the saddle of taking revenge, consequently, both, Sikes and Jim, were victimized and paid heavy prices. The symbolic and philosophical aspects of the confrontation between Tylo Frip and Jim tell the reader that if human beings leave the forces of nature to act as they used to act since the creation of creatures, nothing will happen to man. It is the interference of man into the normal course of the life of nature which causes confrontation between man and nature. Jim considered that Tylo Frip is a source of evil and therefore it must die while the majority of the sailors and even the captains of the passing-by ships did not agree with Jim on such a reckless opinion. He tried to conquer a force of nature by destroying Tylo Frip, but he utterly failed because in the process of trying this

futile task, he annihilated himself and killed many other sailors. This reflects the fact that man has a weak and fragile position in nature and therefore it is impossible for him to conquer the forces of nature. In this novel, Tylo Frip is, both, a symbol of the power of nature and an element that unifies the structure of the events of the novel as all actions of the novel rotate around him. Therefore, as we said earlier, in examining the symbolic dimensions of the forces of nature presented in the novel, Tylo Frip and the sea shall be, carefully, examined in relation to their potentiality to be major symbols in the novel.

Jim Fritz: Symbolic Significance

Jim; the central character, is capable of symbolic interpretation. He stands for those who can't take a right decision or stop a reckless motive. In many situations, he revealed that he can't take the right decision. He allowed his young and inexperienced son to confront a sea-beast and head to his own doom. He quarreled with his wife in an attempt to show that he was right and she was responsible for the death of Sikes. He is an opinionate man and represents those people who insist on carrying out their opinion and consider it to be absolutely correct even if it was reckless. He represents those who can't bear the fate that happens to them and drag others also to bear it with them. He stands in a sharp contrast to Fagin, Sapt and Morgan who tried to return him to his sense, consequently, Fagin was murdered by him, Sapt was knocked by him and Morgan was

silenced by him. Hence, Jim represents stubborn people who insist on doing a reckless action and drag others also to do it for them and punish those who do not obey them.

Jim stands for the evil of revenge. He was completely controlled by the temptation of taking revenge. Obsession with taking revenge became a psychopathic case with Jim and this indicates that his mind ceased to operate except on the idea of taking revenge. He descended into the labyrinth of taking revenge and could not come out of it. His death reflects the disastrous impact of insisting on pursuing revenge. He stands for those people who exert all efforts to achieve revenge at the cost of their own lives and the lives of those who are around them. Thus, Jim is an incarnation of egocentrism which does not bother about the lives of other people and wants to be obeyed even when he takes wrong decisions. He was not accepting any opposition or objection to what he decides or says. He is a victim of the absence of rational reasoning and therefore he was destroyed. He represents the evil of taking revenge and its psychological implications and dangerous consequences that turn a human being into a criminal. In his attempt to take revenge for the death of his son, Jim turned into a criminal who is ready to kill those who stand on his way. If Tylo Frip was an instinctive killer, Jim became a deliberate killer; a criminal and a murderer.

Jim became a symbol of those who ride their own revenging tendencies and become victims of the same. He was completely controlled by the temptation of revenge. In the

process of attempting to take revenge, he committed murder, wrecked his ship, caused the death of others and annihilated himself. Hence, he stands for those type of people who got blinded and obsessed with only taking revenge and nothing else whatever it may be the cost. He represents the evil of revenge and the dangerous consequences of perusing it.

It can be said that the sea, Jim and Tylo Frip acquired metaphorical and symbolic dimensions. As it is said earlier it is the sea which made Jim rich and it is the sea which contained forces of nature that killed his son. It is the sea which made Jim rich and it is the sea which possessed forces that killed Jim and destroyed his ship. It is the fishing and whaling which built the wealth of Jim and it is a strong whale which destroyed Jim and his ship. Tylo Frip is a symbol of nature that acts instinctively whereas Jim became a symbol of human nature that tends to act arrogantly and recklessly. The events of the novel tell us that human beings can't face the instinctive behavior of the forces of nature. It is better for human beings not to enter into any conflict with the forces of nature otherwise human beings will always stand as losers and nature and the instinctive behavior of the forces of nature will always prevail.

Obsession with Taking Revenge

Jim's obsession with the motive of taking revenge acquired symbolic dimensions. It turned to be a force that determined the fate of the entire crew of Lingnerland. It stands

for the existential dilemma of man when he becomes obsessed with negative and reckless motives. It reflects the fact that a human being may turn into a slave of his own excessive motives and whims without giving any consideration to the danger that might be hiding behind them. It represents an undeclared death-wish that a man may be involved in without knowing what he is doing. It stands for the declining of proper reasoning and absolute receding of sound judgement to the level of complete annihilation. Under the control of the obsession with the motive of taking revenge, a man does not bother about his life or the lives of those who are around him. Jim's insistence on taking revenge created a criminal out of him, annihilated him, destroyed the ship and killed the sailors and therefore Jim's obsession with taking revenge stands in a sharp contrast to the wisdom of Morgan which saved him, made him rich and created a corridor of life for Rosa and her sons. Thus, by highlighting the repercussions of getting obsessed with taking revenge, the novel exposed the danger of this motive which created a lot of human miseries throughout history.

Jim's Dream

Jim's dream represents a foreshadow which he could not understand or realize. It anticipates the approaching of a lurking danger which surrounds the revenging motive that engulfed him. It was a warning for him that he is doomed to a grim destiny. It stands also for the benevolent side of the invisible

that sent a signal to Jim, but he failed to understand it. It symbolized the opportunity which fate gives to a human being so that he may revise the ways he is adopting and scrutinize the road he is following in order to save himself from a lurking danger. According to the course of the novel, the reader may interpret the dream in the same way Sapt had interpreted it and expect the sad fate which will defeat Jim's motive for taking revenge. Swallowing the ship as seen in Jim's dream is an allegory of the Quranic reference in the story of Yousof *pbuh* which narrates Pharaoh's dream in which he saw fat cows swallow weak cows. It means that the novel dramatized a dream that reflected what was going on in Jim's mind and what will happen if he continues to pursue vengeance. Psychologically, it means that Jim was under a heavy mental pressure to the extent that what he thinks about during daytime, comes, with its own scenario, in his dream. The dream was a short story in itself, but it did not produce a different subject-matter. It handled the same issues which were roaming in Jim's mind while he was insisting on killing Tylo Frip; a conflict that may inflict him with a disaster. Like the Pharaoh ruler, Jim also searched for an interpretation of that dream. In the case of Pharaoh ruler, both, Yousof pbuh and the magicians gave their interpretations of the dream to him. In case of Jim, Sapt and Boxtel gave their interpretations. Sapt became an allegory of the prophet Yousof *pbuh* and gave Jim an apt and suitable interpretation, but unlike the Pharaoh ruler who rejected the magicians' interpretation, accepted the interpretation of the

prophet Yousof *pbuh* and adopted policies that saved the society from an impending socio-economic danger, Jim did not accept Sapt's interpretation. He favored a wrong interpretation offered Boxtel; the allegory of the magicians in the court of the Pharaoh and who had a magic control over Jim's mind and therefore he misguided Jim. Sapt's interpretation came true and Jim realized this fact very late while he was dying. Hence, the dream stands for a foreshadow and an early warning to Jim and the sailors, as well, but Jim did not pay any heed to it.

The Confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip

The confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip was so terrible that made it possess a symbolic dimension. It represents the existential nature of the conflict between man and nature and their complicated relations. It stands for the environmental problems which humanity is facing in contemporary world due to the misuse of nature or misbehaving with it. It stands for the cruelty of man in dealing with nature around him and represents the reckless behavior of man which causes damage to nature and destruction of the relation between man and nature. It, literarily and philosophically, addresses environmental issues of the modern world. It gives rise to an existential question: Are wise people like Morgan exist among human beings or all of them are like Jim, Sikes, Boxtel and Rosa; before her moral reform, and the officers of the port? A cursory glance at the environmental problems which man faces now

indicates that all human beings are like Jim, Sikes, Boxtel and the officers of the port. Such types of people are dominating the theater and harming human life. This is clear from the officers' determination to send warships to kill Tylo Frip. If human beings stick to the position of Sapt, Fagin and Morgan or reach, at least the level of the moral regeneration which Rosa achieved at the end of the novel, humanity shall celebrate the conservation of nature and the future of humanity and nature will be bright. However, if human beings remain dominated by characters such as Jim, Sikes, Boxtel and the officers of the port, then it is doomed and bound to lose everything and, in this process, nature will suffer, too.

Murder of Fagin and his Dead Body

Though Jim was not a brother of Fagin, however, the murder of Fagin acquired a symbolic dimension with its own differences. It is an allegory of the Quranic reference that tells us about the murdering of Abel; 'Habeel' by Cain; 'Qabeel'. The dead body of Abel became a source of moral torture to Cain and whereas the body of Fagin became a source of psychological chase and moral torture to Jim. The murder of Fagin stands for the ramifications of the evils of being overwhelmed with reckless motives. It represents the consequences of a reckless behavior that takes away the life of an innocent man who was nursing nothing except good intentions towards Jim. It stands for the fact that when pursuing vengeance becomes the dominant and

controlling motive within the heart of a human being, it turns him into a blind beast who is ready to smoke away the lives of others. It is a warning for human beings that if any man or woman makes the motive of taking revenge as his/her main concern, he/she and the society as a whole will pay a heavy price. The murder of Fagin represents the hollowness of the motive of taking revenge which Jim was pursuing. It stands for the early warning which Jim was supposed to understand by thinking about the dream which he had seen, realize the risky nature of what he was doing and cease to pursue vengeance. The remaining of Fagin's body and his opened eyes which were gazing at Jim, represent the signals of the invisible that warns Jim of the grim fate which was waiting for him and the crew, as well, whether they are innocent or evilly people because when evil dominates and erupts, its ramifications, negatively, affect even the innocent people. In other words, Fagin's opened eyes which stare at Jim, symbolize the anger of the invisible on the criminality of Jim that made him kill an innocent man.

Death of Jim

The death of Jim has a symbolic touch which reflects man's fate when he goes blindly behind his reckless whims. This symbolic touch has been projected through Jim's physical and mental suffering in the last moments of his life. Fagin's face, his opened eyes and his haunting spirit were chasing Jim. They, mentally and psychologically, exhausted him.

Fagin's face with his gazing eyes reappeared before Jim. Fagin's spirit said to Jim, "You will come with me soon!", "No pain again." "You will come with me in less than one minute.", "Next moment! Goodbye.", as if Fagin was a judge who was monitoring Jim's execution while the sea and Tylo Frip were executors only. It shows that Fagin's spirit exploited each and every moment of Jim's remaining life to torture, torment and then destroy him from within. The scene has metaphysical and existential dimensions which project the effects of conscious mind on the subconscious mind and the complicated relations between the mental state of a man when he is about to die and the past deeds which he had committed. It suggests that man does not shift to the state of death unless he takes a stock of his deeds in the world; particularly, the major deeds and specially the evilly deeds as they haunt him even if he tried to escape their haunting. In this regard, during death, Jim became the allegory of Abo Bakr ibn Abee Qohafa who, at the last moments of his life regretted for attacking the house of Lady Fatima; the daughter of the prophet Mohammed, *pbu both of them*. The results from his attack on that holy and prophetic house were chasing and torturing him at the last moments of his evilly life. Here also, Jim was being tortured due to his attack on Fagin and killing him. It indicates that though Jim had been in a revenging mission, he was aware that he is a criminal whose execution is thought and justified not only by his adversary Tylo Frip, but also by the spirit of Fagin. Hence, Tylo Frip and Fagin have undertaken the task

of executing Jim. Jim's fear of being executed in New York and his regret for not listening to those who advised him made him an allegory of Omar bin Alkhattab who, at the last moments of his evilly life, wished that if he had mountains of gold to pay to 'God' so as to escape the torture of hell, but alas, there is not escape from what he deserves.

During the death of Jim, as the above quotations indicate, there was intermingling of the physical and metaphysical world. The consciousness was at its lowest level, the subconsciousness was at its highest level. The stream of consciousness which is mixed with the repercussions of his criminal and reckless deeds was flooding his subconscious mind and returning again to the conscious mind. Meanwhile, Tylo Frip and the sea were undertaking the physical side of Jim's execution while Fagin was undertaking the psychological side of it. In other words, it was an internal and external torturing and during this process, Jim realized the dimensions of the justice of, both, nature and fate and the repercussions of human reckless deeds. Unfortunately, his conscience has been revived very late and made him express a late regret by saying, "I wish that I listened to them;" meaning those who advised him including Fagin himself. He regretted for possessing a stubborn mentality and sticking to pursuing a failure mission that led him to his doom. He did not only fail to take revenge for his son, but also found himself facing the same doom of his son and engineering the same grim fate for other sailors who were victimized by him. Before death, he was not only

physically destroyed, but also psychologically exhausted. This suggests that when irrational human world confronts nature, it is the irrational human world which will lose and pay a heavy price.

Ships

Ships in in the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' are recurring images. They acquired symbolic qualities. The ships which did not fight against Tylo Frip are allegorical examples of the ships mentioned in the holy Quran. The holy Quran says, "Verily! In the creation of the heavens and the earth, and in the alternation of night and day, and the ships which sail through the sea with that which is of use to mankind…" They are mini containers of the sources of human life. They symbolize the vehicles which carry human beings to where they can find not only their means of subsistence, but also the sources that establish a luxurious life for them provided that those sources are treated and utilized properly. They are supposed to sail in seas to benefit human beings. However, the ship; Lingnerland, stands for the doomed ship which came under the control and steering of a doomed man; Jim, who was not sailing it to benefit mankind, therefore, its fate was like that of Jim; to rest in the bottom of the ocean. It is an allegorical example of the ships about which the Quranic verse says, "Or He could destroy them for what they earned." Lingnerland earned nothing good as it represents a society which is ruled and managed by a reckless ruler who acts according to his whims and drives the society to its doom. It

stands in sharp contrast to those ships of which captains were having rationality and reason that make them understand the instinct of nature and avoid confronting it whereas Lingnerland was steered by revenge-ridden captain who insisted on confronting that sea-beast and therefore plunged the ship into its doom. In this regard, it can be said that Lingnerland stands for the society which is ruled by a dictator who does not want to listen to other opinions and he is ready to rule the society the way he wishes and kill anybody who opposes him.

Boats

Boats are recurrent images in the novel: 'The Legendary Whale', therefore they acquire a deep significance. Boats on the deck of Lingnerland or those which are tied to its body represent the lowered level of reasoning and judgment that dominated Jim's life after the death of Sikes. When Jim issues his reckless orders to lower boats to confront Tylo Frip, the boats, here, represent the lowered level of reasoning, rationality and judgments with which Jim used to see and value things around him when he confronts his adversary; Tylo Frip. Therefore, they were incarnations of the failure of Jim's reasoning and judgments which were defeated every time till the end of the novel and contributed to engineering his annihilation. They were wrecked and sunk and those who were on them were either drowned in the sea, devoured or swallowed by Tylo Frip. Whoever reads the

novel: 'The Legendary Whale', the images of the misused and badly manipulated boats hang to his memory for a long time.

The Whirlpool

The whirlpool in the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' stands for the weapon which is created by a force of nature in order to defend itself and defeat its adversary. It stands for the power of nature to devise its own weapons, confront the evilly motives and make whoever pursues taking revenge prone to fall into its chasm and annihilate himself. It represents the force that swallows the impulsive and reckless human tendencies and vanquishes them. It is a ditch that swallows those people who roam around taking revenge or pursue it. It stands for the weapons used by the forces of nature which extinguish a human being and obliterate him if he does not avoid them or transgresses the boundaries set by nature. When a man confronts the forces of nature, they will face man with their own weapons which swallow and burry him.

The Box of Gold-Coins

The box of gold-coins is a recurrent image in the novel. It acquires a symbolic meaning. It represents the material force and influence which are used by every exploiter of people in the society in order to drag people behind him. It stands for the power of wealth and its ability to numb the mental reasoning and wisdom of many people and make them cheer with what pleases

those who exercise control over them. The cheering of some sailors under the influence of the box of gold-coins stands for the material force that makes common people act as gears in the machinery of those who possess the material influence. It reflects the extent which a human being can go in order to have a material gain without giving any consideration to the conscience or consequences. Some of the crew used to look at the box of gold-coins with greedy eyes. Each of them wanted to have it. Therefore, they blindly followed Jim in his fight against Tylo Frip so as to win it. The box of gold-coins has been used for different purposes according to the arising situation. Instead of being a prize for whoever kills Tylo Frip, at the end of the novel, Jim made it a prize for whoever saves Lingnerland from destruction. Thus, the box of gold-coins has been used as a tool to manipulate the sailors. Ironically, at the end of the novel, it rested at the bottom of the ocean along with the wrecked ship and the bodies of the sailors including Jim himself. It could neither save itself nor could it save the ship or the sailors from their final doom. Even Morgan got nothing from it nor did he thought about it during the critical situations which he faced when he was sitting on the floating wood. It lost its value when the ship was sinking and the sailors were dying. It means that glittering of gold has no value at the time of the domination of death over life. It stands for the temporary glittering of wealth that numbs the feeling, reasoning and rationality of many people.

The Floating Wood

The wood which Morgan found floating and he climbed and sat on so as to save himself is not a recurrent image, but it acquired a deep significance in the novel. It stands for a narrow, but great corridor of life which a human being may find at the time of difficulties. It is the service of the invisible to the wise, noble, rational and good people. It is a physical and material savior that stands for the unseen hands of the good omen that are stretched to save a good and noble human being from a lurking danger. It means that the benevolence of the unseen hands of the good omen are stretched only to people who deserve them. The floating wood represents a new opportunity of life, which is achieved as a result of adhering to wisdom and rationality. It symbolizes a narrow corridor of escaping for life in an environment dominated by danger, destruction, blood and lurking death. Morgan's sitting on a piece of wood to safe himself from the consequences of the mad journey in which Jim had put them symbolizes the value of sticking to wisdom which saves the person who adheres to it and engineers for him a corridor of safety and survival.

Similes in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

A simile is a literary or rhetorical device which uses words such as 'like', 'as', etc., to make comparisons. It is the figure of speech that makes a comparison of things of a different kind to make the description more vivid, suggestive and interesting. Many similes are incorporated in the novel: 'The Legendary Whale'. They were employed to perform many functions. They became meaning-loaded elements that enriched the theme of the novel and reflected the irony of the situation. Expressing his expectation for Sikes' future, Jim says to him, "One day, you will be a good hunter and trader just like me," but, while phrasing this sentence, Jim was not aware what fate hides to Sikes. The dramatic irony is that Jim compared the future professionalism of Sikes to his own current professionalism, but fate decided something else.

Depicting the mental state of affairs of Jim in the wake of the death of Sikes, the narrator says, "He ran up and down the ship like a mad creature and howled like an animal." In this double simile, Jim's conduct was compared to that of a mad creature and his howling like that of an animal suggesting the extent of loss of reason and mental balance which Jim experienced in the wake of the death of his son. The comparison gives an elaborative, vivid and expressive picture of the situation.

In an attempt to halt Rosa's loss of control over herself in the wake of hearing about the death of Sikes, Jim says to Rosa, "Don't act like a mad monkey." In this simile, Jim compares Rosa's behavior to that of a mad monkey suggesting that even normal monkeys have a sense, ironically enough, the narrator compares those who unquestionably jumped into the boats to fight Tylo Frip to monkeys and not mad monkeys and the two comparisons suggest that human beings should not act like monkeys whether they were normal or mad; if any mad monkey is there. Describing the way sailors jumped into the lowered boats, the narrator says, "The men lowered the boats and jumped onto them like monkeys." This is one of the few expressions in the novel which give rise to humor and relieve the reader from the serious course of the texts of the novel. In this simile, the men who jumped into the boats were compared to monkeys. It suggests that sometime human beings become like the animals which are trained to do something and they do it mechanically. It suggests also that sailors were not desiring to fight Tylo Frip, but they acted obediently to Jim's orders without any reasoning or sound judgment. In fact, all those who obeyed Jim were like monkeys which had been trained for circus purposes and lured by the reward they get after the performance. The sailors also were running after gold-coins which Jim employed to lure them. Even after they had seen many men got killed by Tylo Frip, they were still ready to fight and get that box of gold-coins and this

shows them to be not more than trained monkeys which are expecting a reward after performance.

Describing sailors' fighting and killing a whale and the outcome of doing so, the narrator says, "All the men continued to pour the whale with spears till it became like a hedgehog.'' In this simile, the arrows and spears which were planted into the whale's body were compared to those of spiny mammals which have stiff and sharp spines on their bodies suggesting the cruel way human beings deal with the treasures of nature. While those stiff and sharp spines on the bodies of hedgehogs are a source of defense for them, here on the body of the whale, they are external and source of death for it. They are eventual signs of human cruelty towards nature.

The course of Jim's instigation by Boxtel to go on in his mission of taking revenge was presented through a simile which is expressed in Boxtel's words that give an inciting interpretation to Jim's dream in which he saw his leg is cut. Boxtel says to Jim, "It's just like the bullet in Fagin's head." In this simile, Boxtel urges Jim not to bother about the details of his dream as he should not bother about planting a bullet in the head of Fagin and going ahead with his revenge task. Thus, Boxtel, incitingly, resembles the cut-leg to a bullet in Fagin's head. It suggests the evilly and instigating nature of Boxtel who did not spare any effort to urge Jim to take revenge not only against Tylo Frip, but also against whoever stands in his way to accomplish that revenge.

The narrator described Tylo Frip's voice by saying, "It was like the woman's scream." In this simile, the scream which was released by Tylo Frip was compared to that of a woman; suggesting Rosa scream which angered Jim, made him mistreat her and landed him in police center and the same scream which the sailors heard, filled up their hearts with fear. It suggests, foreshadows and foretells the doom which is approaching to make sailors' families scream, too. Thus, Tylo Frip's scream became a warning for whoever confronts him.

Threatening to kill Sapt, Jim says to him, "I'll burst your heart into pieces like what we will do with Tylo Frip." In this simile, Jim threatens Sapt and compares what he will do with Sap's heart to what he will do with that of Tylo Frip. It shows that Jim does not value the life of anybody onboard of Lingnerland. It reflects his anger and intention towards, both, Sapt and Tylo Frip. It suggests that Jim wants things to go as he likes, otherwise, he is ready to commit the worst to let things go as he likes.

In the course of his instigating the sailors to continue fighting against Tylo Frip, Jim says, "Why are you standing like a rock?" In this simile, the men who were standing and looking at Tylo Frip were compared to the rock which does not move suggesting not solidness or strength, but fear from Tylo Frip which is ingrained within the hearts of the sailors and turned them into static bodies that are as dead as the rocks. They were in need of some power that frees them from that innate fear which

they feel towards Tylo Frip so that they may turn from that sone-like position into alive and moving human beings who are ready to fight Tylo Frip bravely.

The narrator described the rotation of a boat around the whirlpool that has been created by Tylo Frip. He says, "It rotated around itself strongly and swiftly like a planet." In this simile, Tylo Frip which started rotating around itself was compared to a planet; the center that determines the fate of the edges and consequently the boats which were tied with ropes to the spears which were fitted in Tylo Frip's body were belonging to that planet; Tylo Frip. They started rotating around a center that has full control over them and rather determines their fate. It suggests that Tylo Frip has full control over the battle and it is it which will determine its end and in the way it likes. In other words, it is Tylo Frip which will determine the final result of that battle as he is the center and the rest are rotating around it and affiliated to it. In a similar simile, the narrator says, "The boats began to rotate around Tylo, like clock pointers." In this simile, the boats which were rotating around Tylo Frip were compared to clock pointers that are fixed to a center that controls them. It suggests that Tylo Frip's victory over Jim and his sailors is a matter of time.

Describing the squid that misled them and appeared like Tylo Frip, Taigo said, "I think that it has some defenders just like snakes." It suggests that when man gets controlled by the greed that grows within him, his eyes will see things according to the

greed that dominates him. Therefore, a squid appeared to be like Tylo Frip despite the big difference between them.

Describing the thick layer of the fat that protects the body of a whale, the narrator says, "like the crust of the orange, surrounds the body." This simile suggests that nothing in nature is left without a system that protects it and therefore Jim and his sailors must be ready to face the worst. Nature is ready with various kinds of defense systems and whoever fight it must be ready to break through those defense systems.

Describing the fierceness of the battles against Tylo Frip, Bill says, "I have never seen fierce battles like those before." It suggests that Bill is conveying a message to Jim so as to warn him against fighting Tylo Frip. Jim might have fought against human beings, but when he made his fighting directed to nature, he saw an exceptional, phenomenal and legendary performance that defeated him at the end.

Describing the change in the financial status of Morgan, the narrator says, "He became a rich trader like Jim." It suggests that wisdom and patience pay a human being and fate changes the life of the human being. From a poor servant who labors for the riches of Jim, Morgan cooperated with nature and became a person who has the same financial status which Jim was enjoying before death; before conflicting with nature. It indicates that when man deals with nature in a wise manner, he will get the best out of it.

Hence, the above similes acted as effective literary or rhetorical devices and compared different things to make the texts of the novel more vivid, suggestive and interesting. They provided mental images that enriched the texts of the novel and added to the literary load of the texts of the novel.

The Role of Pencil Illustrations in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

Ali's love for nature and his rich knowledge about it had a lasting influence on his aesthetic structure. It shaped his linguistic, literary and aesthetic production whether through writing or drawing. His drawing talent influenced the content of his novel: 'The Legendary Whale' and made him produce simple, but expressive pencil-illustrations that add to the reader's thoughtful and deep understanding of the novel. This proves that Ali is a talented person who lives within what he writes, reads, sees and watches and then transforms it into a literary form. He has more than one way of self-expression. His texts and drawings are influenced by his deep love for nature and his desire to get united with it and its essence and causes. His drawings and writings and his literary texts show that he is a fanatic in his nature's inclinations and reflects a deep desire to protect its valuable treasures throw various forms of artistic and literary presentations.

Being an artist who loves drawing, the budding novelist employed simple pencil illustrations to add to the richness of the content of the story, create visual appeal, associate object, action and mood with texts, heighten the perceptions about the narrative mood, incarnate the unsaid aspects of the story, captivate the senses of the reader, stimulate his imagination, develop in him analytical and interpreting skills, increase reader's observation

skills, offer a different kind of experience that is illustrative and enriching, strengthen reader's understanding of the texts and enhance reader's enjoyment of the details of the novel. The pencil illustrations embrace the essence of the novel and anchor the details of the story to the heart and memory of the reader. When we look at the illustrations in this novel, we remember the famous proverb which says, "A picture is worth a thousand words." They raise the reader's attention and make him go beyond the texts of the novel and enrich his understanding his understanding of their deeper meanings.

The narration combines between simple and easy texts and expressive illustrations to help the reader to understand the course of the progress of the novel and its un-texted details. Though each of the pencil-drawings embodies a text in the novel, they can have layers of meanings that add to the textual and thematic meaning which is not expressed directly through texts. Probing many aspects of those layers of meanings which are ingrained within the illustrations depends on the interpretational skill of the reader or the critic and his way of looking at these illustrations though they represent a text in the novel.

Though the illustrations are drawn with pencil, they became very expressive and served the thematic foundation of the whole story by giving effect to the narrative course of the story and extending, vividly, its pictorial power. They interpret the texts and consolidate, as well, the meanings ingrained within them. They became instrumental in intensifying the actions,

enhancing the meanings of the texts and supporting its narrative discourse and thematic relevance. They act as a glue that makes the eyes of the reader concentrate not only on the texts of the novel, but also on the hidden details of the meaning of the illustrations. Through simple pencil illustrations, the novelist gave a role for interpreting the visual narrative which contributed not only to decoding of the words in the texts, but also understanding the whole story as the illustrations possessed clues that provide the reader with a concrete meaning of the texts of the novel. They play a vital role in the analysis of the texts and enjoying the details and interpretation of the story. As the illustrations represent the textual details, they play an important role in offering more incarnated details, making the narration compact and condensed and giving room to the operation of the imagination of the reader to know what has not been presented through texts. In other words, the novel employs illustrations to add to and complete the narrative details and make the reader possess a tool of active engagement in the novel and interpreting its thematic and philosophical aspects. The clues in the illustrations play an important role in giving meaning to the actions and setting, providing extension to the textual details of the narrative mood, setting the emotional tone and helping the reader to have a deeper understanding of the texts.

The first illustration of Jim and Rosa is so vivid that it adds to the content of the novel and becomes an incarnation and icon of the cordial marital relation, but the texts later own shows how

that cordial marital relation has been disrupted due to the tragic event which took place in the wake of the death of Sikes and gave a twist and drastic change in the relation between Jim and Rosa. Thus, the kind of the cordial relation that has been binding Jim with Rosa is not mentioned through text, but vividly indicated through a single and vivid illustration and later on it contrasted the textual scene of the quarreling between them. It means that the novel asks the reader to look at, both, the texts and illustrations and read in-between with imagination and interpretation skills. This is an addition to the technic of narration that gives a lot of meanings through the clues which are ingrained within the illustrations.

In addition to the well-phrased narration and its distinct texts that express the major theme of the novel, the pencil illustrations in the novel have their great thematic value. They support the recall-value and make the details of the story possess a long stay in the memory of the reader. This makes illustrations possess not only a supplemental aspect of the details of the novel, but also contribute to a deeper understanding of the novel because the reader combines between the texts and the clues in the illustration to gain a better understanding of the message of the novel and the philosophy of the novelist. They make the story more vivid, alive and expressive. They elaborate on the texts and offer a background knowledge and contextual clues to the content of the story. For example, the first illustration which depicts the kind of the cordial relation between Jim and Rosa is

as remembered as the texts of the first pages of the novel or even better than them. The book cover of the novel itself is an eye-catching cover that summarizes the contents of the novel and projects the conflict between man and nature. It is highly suggestive and urges the reader to go through the details of the novel.

The novel has many other illustrations that have a high recall value and play a crucial role in consolidating the attention of the reader and enrich his imagination. It means that the novel is supported with expressive illustrations that can aid the interpreting skill of the reader, make him understand the characters of the novel better and build his confidence in comprehending the textual aspects of the novel and understanding its thematic and philosophical message.

Characterization in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

The novelist has done justice to characterization and created unforgettable characters who will remain in the memory of whoever reads the novel because they are iconic characters; in the sense that some of them became icons which symbolize negative motives and evils whereas some others will remain icons which symbolize wisdom, nobility, patience and faithfulness. Thus, the characterization represents confronting and conflicting values that acted, interacted and determined the fate of all characters and the end of the novel. The characters of the novel experience a wide range of emotions which expose them and in the course of this exposition, the narration goes forward, the plot gets fostered and the theme is developed. The major characters, their attitudes, feelings emotions and other aspects of their motives have been, elaborately, dealt with. In fact, the descriptive and rather probing details of human psyche and human nature are everywhere in the novel. The technique adopted by the novelist to describe the characters of the novel is that he described the physical features of some of them either through texts, illustration or both of them, conveyed what they say and depicted their thoughts, feelings, emotions and attitudes and thus all of them have been, fully, described. The motives and psychic traits of some characters were revealed through their dialogues, some of them were exposed through their actions,

reactions, thoughts, feeling and emotions and some of them through their passive attitudes. Some characters' personalities were also revealed through their reactions to situations, events and conducts of other characters. Characters themselves also contributed to analyze each other and react to each other according to the conclusions which they derive from that analyzing or their observation. The mutual analysis to each other arises from the continuous interactions and conflicts which took place between each other throughout the novel. Characters' analyzing to each other reveals the deep knowledge of the novelist about human psychology and how the interaction among people can provide full details about their inner beings. For example, at the end of the novel, Bill; the captain of Todoshima ship says to Morgan, "Jim is an arrogant man…..He was a stupid man…..a criminal", and Morgan considered Jim to be a "bad-tempered man." It is a revelation of what human beings truly can be under the influence of their own motives. It reflects the result of the conflicts which provided the novel with a lot of actions and events. Thus, the novel offered a detailed analysis to many characters, their motives, emotions, feelings, attitudes and even inner thoughts which were reigning within the minds of many of them. Many characters such as Morgan, Sapt and Fagin became very intimate to the reader due to their positive roles throughout the novel. Even those temporary characters whom the reader passes-by like the captains of the other ships; particularly Bill, are unforgettable characters because the novelist went deep into

their impressions about Jim and reflected their untold comments that the reader clearly feels and understands.

In this novel, there are human characters and a non-human character; Tylo Frip. It will not be out of context here to handle some of them and analyze them as such an analysis is essential for delineating the theme and philosophy of the novel and its various aspects.

The Major Human Character

Jim Fritz: A Case of Obsession with Revenge

The material of the novel provides for a detailed study and analysis of Jim's character. He was introduced early in the novel. He is a professional fish and whale's oil trader who collected his wealth from fishing and whaling. Though he is not the hero, but he continued to remain the center of the narrator's interest while other characters were subordinate to him because he stands in a well-defined relation to them. They served to illuminate him and his motives, feelings, emotions and attitudes. Therefore, they are, directly or indirectly, affected by him. The events of the nove1 exposed Jim's personality and gave an insight into Jim's mind, his emotions, actions, reactions and his inner world. He is a mixture of leniency, staggering personality, obstinacy, antagonism, irrationality and recklessness which were potent within him despite his apparent initial normal character which he displayed during his talk with Rosa at the opening of

the novel. This mixture made him a fragile character who can't withstand the fates that fall on him.

He is a character whose reason, initially, directs him towards a decision, but under pressure from others, he departs it. In other words, he may stick to a proper opinion and then, due to some influences, he departs that proper opinion and land on a wrong decision. An instance of that staggering in Jim's opinion has been manifested when Rosa suggested for him to take Sikes with him in the planned fishing and whaling journey. Initially, he was against such an idea as if he was knowing that something may go wrong, but later on, he agreed to take Sikes with him. Another instance of that staggering in Jim's opinion has been depicted when he, initially, refuses to allow Sikes to confront Tylo Frip, but, later on, he agreed and allowed him to confront it and in the process of that confrontation, Sikes died, consequently, he went crazy mobilizing everybody and everything to take revenge. Another instance of that staggering in Jim's opinion is that he was against hunting any whale. He was in favor of only killing Tylo Frip. When Sapt told him that hunting a sperm whale will attract Tylo Frip to come near the ship, he accepted.

Jim lost his ability to take and accomplish right decisions and adopted reckless decisions that cost him a lot and guided him to his final death. Under the control of the idea of training Sikes and making him a professional fisherman and whale hunter, Jim could not grade the course of training a young lad in the art of

fishing and whaling and let it go forward gradually and safely. He jumped over the stages of training and allowed him to fight Tylo Frip without putting into consideration the consequences of allowing his young and inexperienced son to dive into the sea and fight a sea-beast. Consequently, Sikes got killed and Jim's life has become a bundle of reckless decisions. It turned his relations with Rosa upside down. The quarrel between them was not having any meaning because both of them were equally grieved for the death of Sikes. Then, Rosa instigated him to kill Tylo Frip though he was not lacking the motive to do so. He would have gone for revenging even if Rosa had not urged him to do so because he was already full of rage against Tylo Frip. He was dominated by an overwhelming desire to take revenge that blinded his eyes and numbed his intellect. He and his wife represent those types of people who take nature's instinctive behavior as if it is directed against them, personally, and then they develop a revenging tendency that costs them a lot.

Jim mobilized everyone and everything to take revenge and launched a campaign against Tylo Frip to kill it. Though he tried to have a full control over the thinking and working-mind of his crew, but his thinking was completely different from those of many sailors. Therefore, he was in a continuous conflict with them. He got used to devaluate their fishing and whaling efforts and their opinions, too. When the crew were speaking about the loss which Tylo Frip caused for them, Jim said, "Stop talking about yesterday's loss." When a sailor informed him about the

successful hunting of a big whale, Jim said, "Really? Did they see Tylo Frip?" the man replied, "I do not think so." Jim said, "Stupid men." The man tried to make him aware of what he is saying by saying, "But this is not the fault of men. Tylo Frip didn't come…." The narrator says, "The grey whale died after few moments. The men pulled its heavy body to the ship. Jim looked at the dead whale. The crew told him about the story of killing the grey whale. However, instead of cheering with the crew, Jim got angry because Tylo Frip hasn't come yet." This indicates that Jim was obsessed only with killing Tylo Frip and he was considering that hunting any other whale or fish should be only a means to attract and kill Tylo Frip. He became haunted with the expression "I must take revenge." Throughout the novel, he repeated this expression many times. Even he himself felt that he had repeated this expression many times. He says, "I have to take revenge as I said many times." This expression drove him to an extreme limit that he could neither return from nor could he control. It reflects the psychological trauma from which Jim was suffering.

The death of Sikes affected Jim with psychological trauma that accompanied him up to the last moment of his life. Apparently, he projected his power and influence by adopting some tactics and strategies, but he was a weak and fragile man who, under further psychic pressure, lost the remaining reason within him and consequently faced his final doom. He became psychologically exhausted and his nervous system was out of his

control. The narrator says that Jim, "screamed loudly till he scared the sea birds which were sitting on the mast poles or flying over Lingnerland…. He ran up and down the ship like a mad creature and howled like an animal…" This depicts the extent of the psychological and nervous collapse from which Jim was suffering. He himself was knowing that he had committed a grave mistake by allowing Sikes to confront the whale and therefore he described himself as "a fool…stupid, ugly, clumsy and mad." On his return from the first journey, his wife described him as a "stupid fellow", "criminal man", "wicked man", "cruel man", "murderer" and "the most stupid creature in the world." On his turn, he described her as a "young devil" who deserves "the worst" and threatened to slap her. They started blaming each other for what had happened and the quarrelling between them landed both of them into the police center. This reflects the extent of the conflict and describes the kind of the deteriorating relation between Jim and Rosa. It reveals that both of them are impulsive and they had already passed on that impulsiveness to Sikes who activated it and impulsively insisted on confronting the whale and got killed during that confrontation. The initial resilience which Jim was enjoying disappeared and got replaced by stubbornness, stone-headedness and insistence on taking revenge. Consequently, he incarnated revenge in all its ramifications, became an embodiment of the lost reasoning and turned to be a victim of the disastrous irrationality that considered taking revenge as a sole motive.

The psychological trauma developed anger and hatred within Jim. Pursuing revenge, blindly, made him decrease his life satisfaction and developed problematic behaviors that made him an unsociable creature. He stands for the fact that when a human being gets obsessed with revenge, he can't maintain wisdom or rationality. He became a case of a lost reasoning that is ready to commit any crime in order to accomplish revenge against an instinctive sea-animal without any consideration to his own life or the lives of the sailors. The traumatic state that affected Jim after the death of Sikes, disordered his mind. Consequently, he became obsessed with his quest to take revenge and got deprived of any sense of wisdom. He was completely blinded and driven to the borders of madness. Many sailors resisted the symptoms of insanity in Jim and tried to help him to restore his mental balance. However, they reached to a conclusion that he suffers from a psychological problem and needs treatment. Sapt suspected him to be either ill or mad. He says to George, "I think that you shall subject him to psychiatric checkup." "Let him alone," George said, "Don't interfere with his affairs. If you try to stop him from doing what he wants, he may go out of his sense and kill you." Jim became ready to sacrifice everything and everyone for taking revenge. His obsession with taking revenge increased more and more with the increase of the feeling of anger and excessive hatred towards Tylo Frip. It drove him into a state of mental disequilibrium that harmed him and those who were around him. Jim had an unquenchable thirst for taking revenge

and nothing could stop him from killing the whale which he considers to be responsible for the death of his son. The desire to take revenge continued to haunt him and became a sole aim for him. It exhausted him and all sailors, made him a mad chaser of a sea-beast and put all of them face to face with death. It turned Jim into a case that represents a complete collapse of reason, loss of rationality, failure of proper judgement and inability to choose properly. He was under the control of a desire that made him incapable of proper thinking. His ability to have mental concentration has been badly affected. He discarded normal reasoning, drifted towards adopting reckless decisions that do not value human life. He lost the ability to think wisely or employ the common sense to deal with the arising situations and became a psychopathic figure and a symbol of blind tendencies. He got involved in misjudgment and irrationality and put the sailors at risk by engaging them in his own personal vengeance on Tylo Frip. He proved to be a man with exceptional ability for pursuing revenge with a complete nullification of intellect and annihilation of reasoning. Under the obsession with killing Tylo Frip and its negative effects on his reasoning, rationality and mental balance him, Jim drove himself and the crew to a fatal end. The reader gets shocked by the blindness of the motive of revenge and therefore he continues to read the novel to know more about the ramifications of such a reckless tendency. Through Jim's motive to take revenge, the story acquired its driving force, moved forward and reached to its tragic end. Through him, the novel

shows that when some people are confronted by somebody or something and consequently sustain a loss or pain, they acquire a negative feeling and develop a strong tendency to respond to the causer of the loss or pain through a counteracting negative behavior in the form of anger, hatred or revenge. Those negative behaviors explain why people indulge in taking revenge after a tragedy caused to them or to their loved ones. Jim was an embodiment of such people. His character and conduct stand for the negative ramification of pursuing revenge and its destructive implications on human wisdom, reasoning and balance of mind. When reason disappeared in Jim and recklessness and vengeance dominated him, annihilation followed, consequently, all the crew suffered without exception. He pushed the sailors to risk their lives, but he failed to kill Tylo Frip which destroyed him and his mad ambitions. Consequently, he drove himself and the sailors to death. His blind persuasion of taking revenge made him and the sailors rest in the bottom of the ocean along with the box of gold-coins that blinded the eyes of some of them for sometimes. His character shows the close relationship between revenge, mental disequilibrium and self-annihilation. Jim is a case which makes the reader realize that when the personality of a human being is not governed by reason, then nothing will follow except self-destruction. He makes the reader realize that if a human being insists on taking revenge, transcends the limits set by reason and refuses to listen to the advises of the sincere people

around him, then, he is rolling, fast, towards the chasm of his own doom.

Jim's mind overflew with the motive to take revenge. The type of motive for taking revenge which Jim pursued was so chronic and relentless that it made him collide with the entire world around him. In case of Jim, the motive for taking revenge turned into a form of hostility and aggression towards everybody and everything around him. It was not devoted for any noble cause which justifies it. Rather, it displayed a psychic problem rather than a noble cause. It was the most vehement form of revenge which acquired a pathological vindictiveness that is characterized by its destructive repercussions. It did not put into consideration the probability of reciprocal damage which exceeds the limits and requirements of taking revenging and affects all those who were around Jim. Jim started pouring his anger on everyone and everything around him. In fact, Jim's motive to take revenge is endowed with the absence of any consideration to the lives of those who were around him. He devoted his life and mobilized those who were around him to take revenge against Tylo Frip just because Sikes, recklessly, insisted on confronting a sea-beast. He, foolishly, allowed him to do so and consequently Sikes was killed. He, irrationally, moved toward a retaliatory action without putting into consideration the dire consequences. The hostile and aggressive tendencies of him towards everybody and everything made him unfair to his wife, sailors, captains of the passing-by ships and even Tylo Frip. He

got obsessed with revenge because he understood it to be a "Tit-for-tat", 'an eye for an eye', 'a tooth for a tooth'; a retaliation, but he could not realize that in his case, it was directed to an instinctive whale which does not understand anything except the instant instinctive actions. Pursuing revenge and forcing his sailors to fight up to the last man turned to be a form of mass murder and manifested criminality within Jim. The fate of such a motive was disastrous and it proved to be disastrous, indeed. It destroyed Jim and caused the death of those who were around him and the suffering of others.

Many reckless events in the novel took place as a result of Jim's obstinate motive to take revenge. His fervent desire to find and kill Tylo Frip continued to intensify and control over his emotion. It made him, symbolically, stands for the evil of taking revenge. He symbolizes those who have been controlled by the motive of taking revenge and became victims of the same. He produced an overwhelming evil which emanates from his mad persuasion of seeking revenge. The events escalated to the extent that led him to his doom. He could not realize that seeking revenge against a force of nature can lead to self-destruction. Hence, he stands for the cases in which the desire to take revenge controls over human mind and turns him into a rolling recklessness that causes death to the avenger and leads innocent lives to death. The obsession within him to take revenge surpassed all measures, transcended all limits, became an ingredient of his own doom and made him wayward, indulgent

in a suicidal task and face to face with death itself which crowned his fatal fate at the end. He represents human recklessness in its most extreme form and level.

By getting engaged in the pursuit of the blind motive to take revenge against a power of nature, Jim indulged in blaming the sea-beast that acted instinctively and killed the reckless Sikes who dived into the open ocean to fight it at its own home. Under the grip of the motive to take revenge, Jim personifies the forces of nature and wrongly considers them as his enemies 'who' are working against him. When he saw the dark clouds he said, "Nothing will scare us. We are whale hunters….We aren't afraid of the silly wind. Jim shall not forgive Tylo Frip nor shall he surrender." He personified Tylo Frip and considered it the sole enemy which he has to confront whatever may be the cost. Before he dies, Jim addresses Tylo Frip by saying, "You can tear me up, but I'll continue chasing you in the world of the dead. Curse upon you!.... Then, he spat in the direction of the whale." Such statements depict the extent of the loss of mental balance from which Jim was suffering. He was always on the shore of anger and nervousness that turned him into a pale and ill character, nevertheless, he was ready to fight against everyone. His obsession with killing Tylo Frip has been projected through his troubled mindset and the effect of anger on it. It means that Jim was struggling not only against Tylo Frip, but also against what it symbolizes; the awesome power of natural forces, and this led to many physical and mental complications within him.

Nurturing the motive to take revenge took hold of him and it intensely captivated his mind and heart. The desire to take revenge rehabilitated his mind to the extent that made him think day and night about Tylo Frip. It had its harmful effects in terms of the health and well-being of Jim. In fact, obstinacy was controlling him, obsession with taking revenge was driving him and anger was consuming his health.

Jim became an example of an egocentric man who imposes his opinion on others by all means. He was a case of an opinionated man who closes his eyes, puts mud into his ears and refuses to listen to any advice or opinion if it does not pour into the channel of what he wants; taking revenge. He considered any advice as a movement against him and therefore he was rude to everybody who advises him. Advising Jim became a source of harm to whoever advices him and not a source of positive influence on him. He wanted to be the person who issues orders and the rest of the sailors shall carry out his orders immediately at any cost and without any objection or question. He was against hunting sperm whales. When sailors failed to hunt a sperm whale, he was disappointed as he was expecting that it will lure Tylo Frip to come. When the sailors hunted a grey whale, he was not happy because Tylo Frip did not appear. He considered that hunting sperm whales, grey whales or right whales is not more than a means to reach to Tylo Frip and he was not concerned with any commercial hunting. He was ready to engage sailors in a futile work of catching tuna and throwing it into the sea so as to

attract Tylo Frip. In spite of advices from Sapt, Morgan, Fagin and captains of the passing-by ships, Jim remained relentless and uncompromising and refused to change his mind or depart the idea of taking revenge. He opted for what his whims dictate on him. He "threw his crew's advices to the wind" and "went to the extent of killing Fagin just because he advised him" as Morgan puts it.

Jim used every weapon to pursue revenge and extinguish Tylo Frip. To manipulate sailors and make them accomplish his reckless motive, he employed different strategies such as tempting sailors with gold-coins, organizing anti-Tylo Frip propaganda, cursing Tylo Frip, calling it 'trade destroyer' making sailors shout, "Death to Tylo Frip", concealing truth about the fierceness of Tylo Frip and threatening those who oppose him. He gave special care to win the strong African hunters to his side and mobilize them to kill Tylo Frip. The effect of Jim's propaganda fruited in some sailors. They became obsessed with the box of gold-coins and wanted to win it. Greed made Robert consider a squid to be Tylo Frip. Consequently, sailors acted hysterically, lowered boats and sailed towards an object to find it nothing more than a squid. Jim's anger and antagonism towards Tylo Frip made him go to the extent of nursing the idea of eating Tylo Frip's meat though orca's meat is not eatable. He tried to use this idea to mobilize sailors around him and control over their minds and actions. Jim says, "If we kill Tylo Frip, we must eat its meat." Fagin replied, "How?

Orca's meat is not eatable." Jim said, "We will do that…Nothing can stop us." Fagin insisted on his position by saying, "I am not trying to stop you. You may eat it, but its meat may be harmful." Jim mocked him by saying "How silly! You are just joking…Stop talking and finish your meal. The crew will eat Tylo, won't they?" Unfortunately, some sailors became so resilient that they agreed with Jim's strange ideas. They answered to show their readiness to eat its meat by shouting, "We will, we will." In fact, Jim's propaganda was a kind of a 'mainstream' narration that aimed to control over the mind of sailors and direct their actions that, gradually, engineered the disaster which happened at the end.

However, Jim's propaganda against Tylo Frip was not free from ploughing and strategies which aimed to fog the consciousness of sailors and make them go, blindly, into futile battles against Tylo Frip and keep them continue fighting it. In order to keep the level of the morals of confronting Tylo Frip in his sailors high, he tried to conceal Hawkins' defeat by Tylo Frip. He asked those sailors who accompanied him to Hawkins' ship not to tell sailors on Lingnerland what Hawkins had said about the danger of Tylo Frip. He wanted to maintain in them the motive to confront Tylo Frip. He was worried that if they hear about it, their desire to confront Tylo Frip will recede. It means that Jim's personality exhibited some measures of contradiction. He was frank to express his fear from Tylo Frip to Boxtel only because he was under the instigations of Boxtel. It shows that

Jim was strong in front of all characters except Boxtel. There was a kind of unjustified respect in him towards Boxtel or a blind believe in what the latter says. At some point, he expressed his fear from Tylo Frip and became hesitant to continue his attempt to kill it, but he never revealed that fear or hesitation to anybody except to Boxtel because many sailors were against his revenging project while Boxtel was supporting it. It seems that Jim was trying to get moral support from Boxtel who encouraged him to go on in his attempt to kill Tylo Frip. When he was with sailors who oppose his revenging impulse, he expressed his determination and ability to kill Tylo Frip, but when he was with Boxtel, he admitted the strength of Tylo Frip and expressed his hesitation to continue fighting it. In front of sailors, he always undermined Tylo Frip's strength, but he admitted to Boxtel the strength of Tylo Frip by saying, "but it was strong, indeed….Sometimes it comes to my mind that I shall not fight it again." When Tylo Frip jumps near the ship, Jim says, "Jump as you like…This will be your last jumping." In another occasion, Jim addressed Tylo Frip, "Jump again for your last time." This reveals the psychological phenomenon; reactance, in Jim which is based on expressing the opposite of the conviction which is ingrained within, therefore, he was objecting to some suggestions and then accepting them. This is one of the manifestations of a chronic case of stubbornness that made reactance a controlling power which rules over Jim's mind. He remained hanged on Boxtel's instigations even after Boxtel's

death though he was aware that what Sapt and Fagin were saying to him was true and right. It means that Jim was a double-faced person, vengeance monger and an engineer of fake 'mainstream' narration that proved itself to be just slogans without a true substance and they became a source of his downfall. Through that fake 'mainstream' narration, he controlled over many sailors and successfully made fatalism a willful relief to them. He turned them into gears in his revenging machine. He manipulated and forced them not only to set aside their brains, but also to suppress their fear during times of confrontation with Tylo Frip. It seems that he made them to believe that what would occur to them has already been pre-decided and therefore they have to accept Jim's orders as a fate though he did not accept the death of Sikes as a fate. It seems that, here, the novelist gestured about politics by making an analogy of Jim's strategies to those of politicians. The strategies that Jim adopted to mobilize sailors to carry out his revenging strategies are similar to the political strategies adopted by a politician to mobilize the stupid people to enable him to reach his own ulterior motives and usually, at the end, the people are the real losers and victims. Such exploitation shows the reader the extent to which a single man can drag an entire group, society or a nation to serve his personal obsessions without any regard to the common interests of the people. This is one of the instances which show that the novelist employed psychology and political analogy to shape and expose the personalities of some characters in the novel. He employed political and psychological

references in a literary work that gives the tale of a sea-journey in order to give it a deep thematic and philosophical dimension. Here, the novelist wanted to say that when a person gets obsessed with something that will fulfil his motives, he will devote his entire energy to pursue it and employ fragile people to serve him and become under his bondage. Some sailors on the ship opposed Jim while some of them were like monkeys jumping into boats to carry out Jim's whims in a 'robotic' circus. It means that Jim was having absolute control over some of his men up to the last moment. They carried out his orders to attack Tylo Frip whereas some sailors turned to be against him as he wanted to engage them in a futile fighting against Tylo Frip and sail even to the north pole in his attempt to accomplish his revenging task. He wanted to devote the whole journey for killing Tylo Frip and this created a conflict of interest among sailors themselves. He exploited, both, the fishermen and the hunted whales to his end; killing Tylo Frip. Those who were against him wanted to catch fish and hunt whales so as to get some pocket's money whereas Jim was against the idea of commercial hunting. Boxtel instigated Jim to go ahead with his revenging project while some other sailors like Sapt, Fagin and Morgan, to some extent, opposed him and tried to restore Jim's right sense. During this conflict, many confrontations took place. Jim has gone to the extent of threatening to kill anyone who opposes his revenging mission. Thus, he was not only fighting against Tylo Frip, but also conflicting with many sailors onboard. He found Fagin and

Sapt as the main opposers and therefore he disliked seeing their faces. When somebody knocks his door, he says, "If you are Fagin or Sapt, don't come in," despite the fact that Fagin was a kind man who was concerned about the life of Jim, but under the obsession with killing Tylo Frip, Jim became uncompassionate and lost his ability to know the real intentions and sentiments of people towards him. When he and his men were going to fight Tylo Frip, Fagin, despite the fact that Fagin was knocked on head by Jim and consequently lost a tooth, he came and stood in front of Jim. His eyes were full of tears. He said to Jim, "Sir, don't kill yourself." He requested Jim by saying, "The whale was about to cut your leg. We don't want to lose you. You are our captain. You have a family waiting for you. Forget about that whale." Nevertheless, Jim pushed him away. This indicates the fact that Jim was uncompassionate and his heart turned to be like a stone. He threatened to kill Fagin if he advices him again. The continuous disagreement between Jim and Fagin crowned itself by Jim's shooting and murdering Fagin only because he advised Jim to eschew the idea of taking revenge and let them go back safely to their families. Thus, Jim committed murder to silence his opponents and consequently the obsession with taking revenge got mixed with criminality and turned Jim into a human killer. Hence, the political allegory of Jim got fully established. He represented dictators who let their wrong policies continue to push people to their doom.

Jim's obsession with killing Tylo Frip involved all sailors in a "mad journey" as Fagin described it. It engulfed Jim in rudeness, recklessness and criminality. As we have seen, the desire to take revenge developed in Jim many aggressive behaviors in interpersonal relationships. No one was safe in Jim's psychopathic path, not even himself. He nursed a strong tendency to take revenge and punish and retaliate with a similar negative behavior against a force of nature and everyone who stands on his way to take revenge. By doing so, he thought that he would get some sort of inner satisfaction and make the force that is behind his pain and suffering receive the punishment it deserves. It made him selective in his preference of human relations and consequently he was unable to establish normal relations with others. He made the mysterious Boxtel a close friend and considered Fagin and Sapt as enemies. He got imprisoned within himself and turned to be a man who is controlled by antagonism towards Tylo Frip to the extent that complicated his relations with everyone around him. He knocked Sapt's head and belly and killed Fagin who was worried about his safety. It means that Jim was ready to wreck his relation even with those who were the nearest to him such as Rosa and Morgan. The death of his son, his quarreling with Rosa and the control of the motive of taking revenge over him distorted his vision of human relations and made him an obstinate man who sticks to the dictations of his whims. He became ready to sacrifice everybody onboard in the altar of his personal revenge.

He forgot Systen, obeyed Boxtel, put him side by side with Sike and his cut-leg and determined to take revenge for both of them.

The obsession with the motive to take revenge made Jim act consciously and unconsciously. Consciously, it made him busy with taking revenge against a sea-animal and unconsciously, it shaped his daily affairs and night dream. It made him see the consequences of obsession with taking revenge in his own dream which foreshadowed the events that will take place and showed him the grim fate which waits for him, but he was not deterred. He continued to think about the meaning of that dream and called it "a stupid hallucination." He rejected Sapt's apt interpretation which warns him against the dire consequences of what he is involved in and accepted Boxtel's interpretation which serves his motive. He considered that it is not he, but Tylo Frip which will rest in peace in the bottom of the ocean. This indicates that Jim was a stubborn and undeterred man who never listened to any advice whether from within or from others. He never took lesson neither from others' experiences nor from his own experience. He could not realize that the dream which he saw was a bad omen that warned him and the sailors of the dire consequences that await them.

Ever since the death Sikes, Jim has been undergoing a drastic transformation to the worse. His obsession with the idea of taking revenge became a psychic phenomenon within him and made him blind of everything else, except taking revenge. He represents a human being's dilemma when he rides the back of

taking revenge and gets obsessed with it. It made him a murderer, a mass killer and an absconder who is running away from legal justice, but he was not knowing that he was targeting a non-human force that will subject him to its own form of justice. A moment came when he thought that it would be better to engage the remaining sailors into a deadly fight against Tylo Frip so that they do not return to New York and inform the police that he had murdered Fagin. In other words, fearing prosecution in New York, Jim did not want the sailors to return to their families. He involved them in a deadly confrontation despite the fact that all calculations were showing that Tylo Frip will win. He says, "I want to tell the men to keep Fagin's murder as a secret, but I am sure that they won't do so… They will tell people and people will inform the police. Then, I'll be convicted. I don't want to be humiliated in front of the people. I must kill my men by making them fight the whale." After getting rid of all the sailors who were on the boat, Jim turned himself into a stupid 'honey badger' and continued to fight a huge, a brave and a legendary whale in spite of the fact that its victory over him was definite.

A careful rereading of the texts of the novel shows the implications of the obsession with taking revenge and makes a better understanding of Jim's 'monomaniac revenge' that generated an excessive preoccupation with revenge to such an extent that turned Jim into an embodiment of monomania which makes a human being affected by symptoms of mental disorder that is characterized by irrational preoccupation with one matter

only which caused destructive results. It was a kind of a revenge that controlled over him and drove him to his tragic end. The motive to take revenge and pursuit it caused Jim to focus on the negativities of everything and everyone around him, consequently, he could not save even himself from its negative repercussions. The tragic scene of his death is meant to meet the tragic destiny for him and his crew. At the end of his life, Jim regretted for not listening to those who advised him to do away with the revenge motive, but it was too late. He has been undergoing psychological torture before getting physically annihilated. It exposed the extent of mental breakdown and physical destruction in which Jim was engulfed. The moment of his death exposed his disturbed mind, psychic trauma and physical suffering. It mixed the conscious with the unconscious mind and showed the illusion in which Jim was living and the reality that he was facing. His obstinacy landed him in an illusion that exploited his thinking and energy and drove him to his final doom and in this process, he caused the death of many other sailors and he himself got killed. What Jim experienced at the last moment of his life was a kind of mental existence which transcends the physical existence and gets dominated by the subconsciousness that is chased and tortured with the spirit of Fagin. In a state close to unconsciousness, he was haunted by the face of Fagin, his gazing eyes and his whispering voice. The whole drama reveals the psychological dimensions and implications of killing an innocent person which tortures the

killer before his death. It was a kind of a slapping by the spirit of Fagin on the remaining conscience and consciousness of Jim. It wanted to take revenge against Jim before Tylo Frip and the sea extinguish him. The spirit of Fagin exhausted him psychologically while Tylo Frip and the sea accomplished the physical side of destruction. Consequently, at the last moments of his life, Jim has undergone a total physical and psychological annihilation and destruction.

Thus, Jim's all efforts went awry and revenge did not bring justice to him, instead, it brought death to him and his men. His mindset was preoccupied with taking revenge regardless of the danger that may impact him and the crew. His insane part of his psychic trauma drove him to sacrifice his men and himself in the altar of nature in order to take revenge on an animal that acts instinctively. This depicts the gap which was existing in Jim's consciousness and the mental imbalance from which he was suffering. Jim's monomaniac revenging tendencies prevented him from listening to others or perceive the danger which he was putting himself and the sailors in. Nobody could change him. He was in bondage, and a victim, of his own stubborn vision that guided him towards his own annihilation. He is an obstinate and relentless character who went ahead with his motive of avenging the death of his son without thinking about the consequences. He may not be essentially a villain, but he made himself so because he was under the control of the evil of taking revenge. He waged a war against the orca whale which acts on instinct and not

antagonism. Consequently, he turned that force of nature into an enemy and forced it to confront him. He could not understand that as he pursued vengeance, his impulsive actions spurred nature to respond and retaliate. Jim acted on revenging motives while Tylo Frip acted on instinct of nature and finally natural and non-human instinct defeated the human revenging motive and became triumphant over it. He was defeated by the force of nature which made him a victim of his own revenging motives. Jim's obsession with killing Tylo Frio brought about his own death as well as the death of all those who were on Lingnerland, except Morgan. He has been physically exhausted and psychologically annihilated. He could neither achieve his goal of taking revenge for the death of Sikes by killing Tylo Frip nor could he return to his family safely. He engineered his own death and caused the death of those who were around him. He could not realize that unjust revenge itself can be one of the consequences of bad feeling towards the causer of grievance or loss. If it is not used judiciously, revenge will be an excessive manifestation of anger or hatred and become a destructive attitude that is based on a painful visible or invisible experience which may harm the revenge-seeker himself and this exactly happened to Jim and those who were around him.

It can be said that Jim was a victim of his own recklessness and foolishness which prohibited him from revising his behavior or undergoing any moral change for the better. He is anti-heroic and incapable of any heroic deed. He did not have any good cause

and nothing of his actions or sayings attracts the admiration of the reader. He did not display any kind of noble qualities or valuable attributes. He was a person who got, continuously, dominated with anger, nervousness, desire to take revenge, etc. Due to his egoism, Jim was a stupid man who failed to undergo any moral regeneration till the last moment of his life. His egoism turned to be irredeemable and made him an incurable figure who became a victim of his own ego; the ego of 'I must revenge the death of my son' though it is he who, recklessly, allowed Sikes to confront the sea-beast; Tylo Frip. He dedicated his energy to fight a sea-beast, but he failed and turned himself into a tragic figure and an anti-hero. He must be understood as a victim of his own revenging impulses that drove him to his tragic end. His character represents the fact that when taking revenge becomes the governing tendency in a human being, then, he will never experience any moral regeneration. Therefore, Jim did not experience any sense of moral or spiritual growth nor did he acquire any basic understanding of how nature works in high seas or what the consequences of confronting a force of nature are. Contrary to Jim, Rosa had undergone some measures of moral regeneration due to the loss of her son and husband, but Jim was insisting on taking revenge without looking at the human and material costs of such a reckless venture. He lived nursing the illusion of killing Tylo Frip and at the end he faced the reality of getting killed by it. He reaped dire consequences of his unbridled obsession with taking revenge which made him possess a wrong

vision about his power and underestimate the power of the forces of nature. Through him, the novelist proves that the tendencies to take revenge bring about destructive results. They indicate the absence of any heroic dimension in unfair revenge tendencies. Thus, the reader does not sympathize with him nor does he tend to identify himself with him at all. He is a character who has been driven by reckless motives to fight a sea-beast and, in process, he turned to be a murderer and subjected others to mass-death. Therefore, Jim is neither a hero nor is he a sympathetic figure because he himself is responsible for his own downfall and the death of those who were onboard of Lingnerland. It is he who put himself in that fatal situation despite the advices of his sincere sailors to leave Tylo Frip on its own. His efforts were crowned with not only failure, but also his own death. With a sense of lamenting, Jim himself says, "I wish I had listened….." Jim turned from the role of playing the main character of the novel to an antagonist who, by his reckless confrontation with a force of nature, made 'The Legendary Whale' the main protagonist; the non-human hero of the novel and the victorious animal over the recklessness of man. Thus, the traditional heroism is irrelevant in the case of Jim because he was not aiming at any higher or noble aim behind pursuing revenge for its own sake against a sea-beast which was acting on the basis of its own animal instinct and was not having any antagonism towards him. Therefore, Jim's death evokes no sympathy or pathos for him. It is also clear that the novelist himself does not have sympathy for Jim nor does his

language reflect any sympathy for him as the novelist himself admitted in the interview. There is no sense of admiration in him towards Jim nor does he identify himself with him. In fact, the language of the novel shows that the general mode of dealing with Jim was of exposing empathy; criticism, and not sympathy. Jim was neither the mouthpiece of the novelist nor was he an object of his protection or admiration. In fact, he was an object of the novelist attack through exposing the fatal nature of his reckless revenging tendencies. On the other hand, 'The Legendary Whale' can be considered as the true non-human hero of the novelist while Morgan can be considered the mouthpiece of the novelist and the champion of wisdom and rationality that saves and helps humanity.

While reading the novel, the reader may ask as why did Jim engage himself in a confrontation with an instinctive force of nature that acts naturally and not deliberately or intentionally? Will anything in nature remain ordered or intact if everyone acts in the same way Jim acted? If everyone on earth acts in the same way Jim acted, then, humanity will head towards not only the destruction of the treasures of nature, but also to dig its own grave. Therefore, chasing and killing elements of nature which act instinctively is not acceptable at all. Jim turned himself from an avenger into a murderer and a destroyer of nature, from a grief-stricken person into a person who chases an instinctive animal and drives himself to his doom and consequently he handed over true heroism to 'The Legendary Whale'. He failed

to withstand the sweeping motive of taking revenge despite the advices which he received from those who were around him. He could not realize that the blindness, recklessness and foolishness within him were his true enemy! His loss of reasoning drove him to confront Tylo Frip and made him, up to the last moment of his life, obsessed with killing it despite his repetitive failure to do so. Therefore, he lost intuitive reasoning and turned into a Zelenskian figure who is ready to finish off his own people in a fighting against a presumed enemy who was not his actual enemy, but 'main-stream narration' and stupidity misled him.

The Non-Human Character

Tylo Frip: The True Hero of the Novel

Tylo Frip; 'The Legendary Whale', was introduced with its grand characteristics in the beginning of chapter four. Though it appeared after three chapters, but it dominated the events of the novel and became its true non-human hero. It came roaming around the ship; Lingnerland, and got recognized by Taisam who was knowing it from a previous journey. It was considered as the strongest and most intelligent whale in the world. Sapt described it as a 'strange' and 'foolish' whale that follows fishing-ships and depends on others' hunt in feeding itself. Jim considered it a thief, stupid, foolish and mad whale, but ironically it, marvelously, proved to be wiser and more intelligent than even human beings like Jim, Rosa, Systen and

Boxtel. Later on, Morgan considered it as "a clever whale and an exceptional fighter."

Tylo Frip is a killer-whale which represents the entire orca whales, but it differs from them in the sense that it is a mutated orca whale. All the orca whales are black on the back and white on the belly, but Tylo Frip was brown on the back and white on the belly. It has also three red lines on its face which make it different from other orca whales. All the orca whales are about nine meters, but this one was eighteen meters long. All orca whales are smart, but this one was smarter, faster and jumps higher than other orca whales. These exceptional characteristics make the reader admire this extraordinary whale and continue reading the story so as to know more about this huge and legendary sea-animal which became one of the unforgettable non-human characters in the literature of sea-journeys. For example, in the novel titled: 'Moby Dick', the whale 'Moby Dick' was not a character because the reader does not have access to its thoughts, feelings and intentions. It was an impersonal force of nature, but in the novel titled 'The Legendary Whale', the whale 'Tylo Frip' became a personal force of nature and an important non-human character because the narrator was possessing access to its thoughts, feelings and intentions.

Tylo Frip's behavior within the novel is, generally, consistent with that of the wild animals. It acts out of an instinct to survive, however, Jim infuses that behavior with nefarious intents. Tylo Frip, while performing its instinctive acts, created

trouble to the sailors of Lingnerland. Apparently, it is Tylo Frip which started taking the matter seriously due to the initial skirmish between it and the sailors, but in fact it was acting on instinct only. Its first confrontation with the fishermen and stripping them from their hunt disappointed the crew, irritated Jim and made Systen and Sikes angry. Systen and Sikes called for teaching it a lesson. Systen shot a spear at it, but he fell into the sea, got killed by it and became an early victim of confronting it. Sike built up his anti-Tylo Frip attitude, insisted on confronting it and jumped into the sea to fight it. When it saw Sikes swimming to confront it, it considered him as another enemy who wants to stab it and therefore it killed him and consequently Jim became angry and psychologically collapsed. Tylo Frip became Jim's main adversary. It was perceived by him as evil, stupid, trade-destroyer, etc. This picture of Tylo Frip lived within Jim's consciousness, affected his unconsciousness, controlled over his behavior and led him to his final destruction. He started building anti-Tylo Frip propaganda and considered it as a pure evil that must be confronted and killed. Hence, Tylo Frip became the center of Jim's obsession with taking revenge.

Tylo Frip was well-known to fishing circles. It was popularly known to the hunting ships as "the thief". Even its adversaries admit its power and danger. Hawkins; the captain of a fishing and whaling ship; Interquiek, considers it as, "a great and awesome whale." They felt that there was no need to confront it as it was under the dictation of its own instinct and

not more than that as a sailor said, "Why do we want to kill it?" he asked, "It's just a type of dolphins and it is doing what whales usually do." As it was satisfying its eating instinct, it would trouble hunting ships and cost them a lot, therefore, wise captains of the hunting ships were ignoring its instinctive behavior. Some of them were confronting it and then ignoring it even if it causes them some causalities. Therefore, many ships were going back to New York full of hunt without any need to confront it. However, even before the death of Sikes, Jim exploited the slogan which goes 'Trade destroyer' so as to mobilize sailors to kill Tylo Frip. After the death of Sikes, the slogan continued to be raised by Jim for his own cause; avenging the death of Sikes. The name 'Tylo Frip' became so poignant for Jim that he got annoyed and his face turned red when he mentioned or heard its name.

The course of the novel indicates that Tylo Frip is not only a non-human character in itself, but it is also the true hero which amazed the reader not only with its size, strength, fierceness and fighting skills when it fought Jim and his sailors or other captains of the passing-by ships, but also with its cleverness and fighting strategies that are almost similar to human strategies in confronting enemies. Its confrontation against Jim made it a real hero of the novel. It came out triumphant over the forces that misunderstand nature. It defeated the unbalanced human motives which act with sea-life in the same cruel way they act with each other. It defeated those unbalanced human motives in the form

of Boxtel's and Rosa's instigation to Jim to avenge the death of Sikes.

Tylo Frip is not a human character, but it seems to possess almost a human personality. It is a representation of the anger of nature against human beings that resembles the recurrent rage of nature which human beings experience throughout history. It is an inscrutable and powerful creature that human beings must understand and take it as a warning that nature sends to open the closed human eyes. It can't be defeated, nevertheless, it is not there in the sea to confront human beings, but to be avoided and left to its own; satisfying its instincts and doing what it used to do for millions of years. As a force of nature, it does not have any antagonism towards Jim or any human being. It has, rather, a compassionate and benevolent characteristics which manifested themselves when he guarded the wood on which Morgan was sitting till Todoshima saved him. Though it was capable of destroying Morgan's floating wood as it destroyed Lingnerland, but it seems that Tylo Frip appointed the narrator and Morgan as an ambassador and assigned to them the dissemination of a message to human beings that sea-beasts do not have any intentional antagonism towards peaceful human beings. The events of the novel show that it is the human being who comes to its yard and antagonizes it. It means that Tylo Frip seeks no revenge. It is the man who, arrogantly, troubles it and when it reacts against him, he, unfairly, seeks revenge. This is unfair, indeed. It is the man who, madly, seeks revenge against

an instinctive creature which lives in its own kingdom and it has never come on-shore to trouble human beings. Its killing of its adversaries and sparing Morgan show that it represents the balance between good and evil not exclusively one or the other, therefore, human beings should take care in dealing with such forces or digging out their potent evils.

Tylo Frip became a symbol of the deadly natural forces when they are provoked and confronted. It dominated the novel up to the end and became unforgettable non-human figure for whoever reads the novel. In fact, it is the force which gave the novel its dramatic development and significance. Without Tylo Frip the novel would have not existed and even if it had existed, it would have not acquired that dramatic development and significance which Tylo Frip has given to the events of the novel. It is the non-human hero in the novel which defeated the recklessness of man. If the unnamed narrator was the main mouthpiece of the novelist, Tylo Frip is not only the hero, but also the second mouthpiece of the novelist who, through it, warned man not to transcend his limits, misjudge his strength, underestimate the power of nature or enter into a lost-confrontation with it.

As Tylo Frip possessed an exceptional intelligence and power and as it has to satisfy its instinct, this gave it a measure of notoriousness that made it tend to survive upon the catches of the fishermen. Another manifestation of its exceptional intelligence is that it learns from its encountering with human

being, therefore, when it saw the sailors of Kaitfodam lower their boats, it dived deep into the ocean and disappeared. Moreover, when it is confronted, but it does not have desire to confront, it produces voice to scare the confronters and make them avoid fighting it. However, those notorious manifestations of its intelligence are still not as harmful as those of the human beings who confront the instinctiveness of nature at its own home. It is this instinctiveness which Tylo Frip was exhibiting and employing that irritated the fishermen and whalers. Consequently, some captains confronted it and some other avoided it. These confrontations forced it fight many battles against many sailors in many occasions, but they could not kill it though it bore scars of many confrontations and battles on its huge body, it was always victorious. It knows how to withdraw and when to launch the counterattack. It displayed its exceptional intelligence, power and fury in battles. For example, Hawkins lost his dears in the course of that confrontation. Jim, lost his son and his own life in the course of confronting Tylo Frip. It killed John who was a hunter in Bill's ship in the same way it killed Systen in the first journey of Lingnerland. In the second journey, Tylo Frip' killed many sailors of Jim such as Darnay, Sheigo, Malgo, Boxtel, etc. It devoured and swallowed some of them. It attacked, wrecked and sank Lingnerland and all those who were onboard died except Morgan who lived to blame Rosa for instigating Jim to take revenge against an instinctive sea-creature and doom the ship and its crew by counter-attacks which showed

human beings that they are weak in the face of the rage of nature. Thus, Tylo Frip continued to be victorious to the extent that the official authorities of the port decided to move worships to confront it and the reader is left without any final result about what will happen. This confirms legendary nature of Tylo Frip.

Through Tylo Frip, the novelist manifests aspects that allow for multiple interpretations of the novel in general and Tylo Frip in particular. The events of the novel show that Tylo Frip is not a monster that must be eliminated, rather, it is just a sea animal that acts on its instinct and some notoriety which is necessary for its survival. It is the duty of the human beings to take precautions and get from the sea what they want without interfering with the existing norms of nature because it is that interference with the existing norms of nature which leads to tragedies such as human death, imbalance in nature and environmental problems. Tylo Frip exists as a symbol around which the novelist's theme develops and gives its important message. It became a symbol of nature not only offshore, but also onshore. The confrontation between Jim and Tylo Frip reveals how man deals, recklessly, with nature around him. It exposes the reckless behavior of man which causes damage to nature and destruction of the relation between man and nature. In the same way Jim confronted Tylo Frip, so are the human beings confronting nature around them and damaging it. The end of the novel seems to ask the reader: Do human beings have wise people like Morgan or all of them are like Jim, Sikes and Boxtel?

If human beings are like Rosa, will they undergo a process of moral regeneration like her? How much will the cost be? The end of the novel seems to say to the reader that if human beings become like Morgan, Sapt and Fagin, humanity shall celebrate the conservation of nature and that its future is bright. However, if humanity is dominated by characters such as Jim, Sikes, Systen and Boxtel, then it is doomed and bound to lose everything in its confrontation with the forces of nature. The image of Tylo Frip stands for the personification of power and strength of nature. It became clear that to confront such a legendary whale is like confronting the whole nature because it is not just a whale, but an establisher of the justice in the court of nature. It symbolizes natural world and a punishing aspect of nature that sends reckless adversaries to their doom without coffins.

Throughout the novel, Tylo Frip is not only depicted as an exceptional force of nature with exceptional qualities, but also as a creature which possessed legendary quality. It became legendary because it defeated the forces that do not understand nature and its norms. It is legendary because it stands for the fact that the forces of nature can't be confronted, defeated or pinned down. At the same time, it represented the forces of nature that will continue to be a boon unless human beings turn them into a curse and rage. Through this non-human character, the novelist gave a minute description of the behavior of orca whales and the way they act with their hunt or enemies. The description indicates that the novelist was either a professional whaler or a

person who studied a lot about the behavior of the sea-life in general and the orca whales in particular.

The end of the novel shows that as if Tylo Frip itself was in a mission of taking revenge, but it was not a revenge in the true sense of the term. It was just an instinctive behavior that was, wrongly, considered by human beings as a work of aggression and on the basis of such a misunderstanding, human beings built up their negative reactions against nature and caused damage to it and destruction to their own lives. Thus, Tylo Frip stands for a legendary reaction against human trespassing its living space. Sikes and many sailors died before realizing the catastrophic nature of their deeds. Jim reaped nothing from his confrontation with it except death. Rosa realized the consequences of such a confrontation very late; after she had lost her husband, too. Tylo Frip continued to exist and act instinctively whether for self-defense or for survival as it represents other similar forces of life. Any reckless action to interfere in this natural existence of the forces of nature will not only disrupt man's life, but also it may lead to his annihilation. Tylo Frip's role in the novel made it immortal and omnipresent. Every reader of the novel remembers it whether he was on-shore or off-shore. This makes Tylo Frip an unforgettable non-human character. It is, both, a symbol of the power of nature and an element that unifies the structure of the novel because the whole dramatic aspects of the novel rotate around it and rather created by it.

In order to protect sea-life, the novelist created this non-human character; The Legendary Whale, and made it triumphant over the recklessness of human beings. As it is said earlier, the novel has no true human hero in spite of the noble qualities of some characters like Morgan. If it is taken as a novel which projects the novelist's environmental views, it can be said that Tylo Frip is the true non-human character of the novel which effectively projected a call for man to protect nature. It snatched away the role of the hero of the novel from human characters, became the true hero of the novel and turned the major character; Jim, into just an egoist who, by his reckless obstinacy and reactions, destroyed himself. Therefore, the novelist made Tylo Frip the main protagonist of the novel, engineered its victory over the recklessness of man and hence, Tylo Frip became one of the cases of non-human heroes in literature.

Other Characters

Rosa

Rosa is the only major lady character in the novel as other female characters were just cooks on Lingnerland. She was introduced early in the novel. She is the wife of Jim Fritz and the mother of three boys; the eldest is Sikes. She was leading a luxurious life as a result of the profession of her husband. Their relation was warm and cordial at the beginning of the novel. However, like her husband and son; Sikes, she is also an opinionated character who insisted on Jim to take Sikes with him

in the proposed fishing and whaling journey to train him in his profession. She said, "He can only watch what you are doing and learn from it for his future." In spite of Jim's initial reluctance, she succeeded to convince him to take Sikes with him.

She got shocked by the death of Sikes and consequently the relation between her and Jim got tense and almost collapsed. She told Jim that she did not send Sikes with him to fight a sea-beast, but only to watch and learn from him. She considered Jim as a "stupid fellow", "criminal man", "wicked man", "cruel man", "murderer" and "the most stupid creature in the world." She was described by Jim as a "young devil" who deserves "the worst" and she was threatened to be slapped by him. The argument between Rosa and Jim landed them in police center. It exposes the mutual blaming to each other and throwing the responsibility of Sikes' death on each other. It projected a family bond that was on the verge of complete collapse. Due to the death of Sikes, she got separated physically and emotionally from Jim. After returning from the police center, she went to sleep in another room and made killing of Tylo Frip a condition to normalize her relation with Jim.

When, at the end of the novel, she got the news about the death of Jim, she underwent a complete change. Morgan's words for her were a kind of moral slaps to her because it was she who urged him to take Sikes with him. It was she who urged Jim to take revenge against Tylo Frip and made it a condition to normalize her relation with him. She became a woman who is

grieved in her son and her husband. She realized that her tongue was behind the disaster which fell upon the family. She admits, "I lost, both, Sikes and Jim because of my tongue." Such a confession and regretting enabled her to gain some moral regeneration and accept fate as it is without further negative reactions. Her attitude towards the death of her husband and son are parallel to each other. The death of her son made her mad, drove her to quarrel with her husband, landed her in police center and urged her to separate herself, physically and emotionally, from her husband and produce a condition that she will not have normal relations with him unless he kills Tylo Frip. However, the death of her husband wiped out those negative and revenging tendencies in her, changed and reformed her. It means that, at the end, she has undergone a measure of moral growth that purged her from the motive of taking revenge and the accusation of her husband of being a murderer. Therefore, she gained some sympathy from the reader who feels sorry for her. She found a moral compensation in her two sons who took up the profession of their father. However, she learned the lesson and therefore she did not urge her younger sons to kill Tylo Frip. She became an unforgettable character in the novel 'The Legendary Whale'.

Sikes

Sikes; the eldest son of Jim Fritz, is one of the major characters whose death led to the creation of the major events of the novel. He is a 14 years old boy. He was introduced early in

the novel by his mother; Rosa, who urged his father; Jim, to take him in the planned fishing and whaling journey so that he may learn the profession of his father. After some reluctance and pondering, Jim agreed to take Sikes with him. Sikes rejoiced the idea of accompanying his father in a sea journey. Right from the beginning and even before the starting of the journey, Jim took him to the deck of Lingnerland and started teaching him about sea, fishing and whaling.

Like his mother and father, Sikes is an opinionated boy who insists on doing what he wants to do and consequently he became a victim of his own opinionate personality. When Tylo Frip troubled sailors, he insisted on fighting it. He was bold and overconfident of himself and presumed that he can fight a sea-beast. Initially, he faced the objection of Jim to allow him to fight Tylo Frip, but under the pressure of his insistence, Jim accepted and allowed him to fight Tylo Frip, consequently, he, confidently, held a spear and jumped into the sea, but nothing appeared of him except stains of blood on the surface of the sea. When Jim and some sailors jumped to rescue him, they found that the whale smashed his head, broke his jaw and killed him. His body was brought onboard, but it could neither find a coffin nor could it find a grave to rest in. It started getting decomposed, therefore, the open sea became an open grave for his tiny body. His opinionated personality makes the reader remember that the foundation of behaviors is transferred from parents to children; they are chromosomized. Sikes' opinionated characteristics is

inherent in him. He inherited it from his mother and father who displayed it in the novel. It destroyed him and Jim and caused a heavy loss on Rosa. Sikes represents the reckless generations who do not weigh things, wisely and judiciously. He stands for the generation that rushes to do what it decides to do and loses even its life in the process.

It is Sikes' death that gave a drastic turn to an ordinary fishing and whaling journey and converted it into a force which produces a new revenging journey that killed Jim and all the sailors, except Morgan. His death shocked his parents and led to the collapse of the relation between them though both of them were equally grieved for the death of their son. Sikes' death turned his parents' affairs upside down, involved Jim in a reckless task of taking revenge, drove him and other sailors to their final annihilation and made Rosa receive another major shock. It affected the lives of all characters onboard of Lingnerland and led all of them, except Morgan, to death. The repercussions of his death reflect the collapse of reason within the family due to a calamity that affected it. His death grieved Rosa and made the life of Jim a bundle of irrationality that further affected him and those who were around him. Despite Sikes' short presence in the novel, his death became the driving force of the action of the novel. He was always present as a source that fuels Jim's obsession to take revenge. In other words, his life span was short, but he was always present by the actions and reactions which his death caused. His insistence to fight Tylo

Frip and his quick death remind the reader of the importance of disciplining and rationalizing the motives of the young generations so as to protect them from their own selves and protect the society as a whole. He is an unforgettable character in the novel and if there is any sympathy that may grow towards him, it is because he lost his life at an early age; after giving a kiss to his mother and paying farewell to his brothers who did not know what fate hides for him, but he was responsible for his own death with some measure of responsibility that falls upon his father and mother.

Morgan Tarner

Morgan Tarner; the faithful, noble and sincere servant of Jim Fritz, was introduced early in the novel. He is a wise and honest, a trustworthy and a good fellow of Jim in his business and a sincere friend of his family. He has essentially a good nature which makes every reader like him. The novelist created a sense of intimacy between the reader and Morgan right from the first pages of the novel by presenting his dedicated cooperative, faithful and sincere personality. He represents a fixed personality which is essentially good and even became better at the end of the novel and continued to remain noble. By the early introduction of Morgan, the novelist wanted the reader to remain in close touch with the sincerity, wisdom of Morgan that caused him some suffering, but he was stoic and therefore he reaped the good fruits of his sincerity, wisdom and stoicism.

He has a rare stoicism that characterized his sincerity and faithfulness even when Jim went out of reason, became reckless and died. Throughout the novel, he exhibited sincerity, nobility and unbreakable loyalty to Jim and his family.

He is a man of truth as he convinced Jim to go and tell Rosa about the death of her son. He took care of Jim's family and supported it. He is an embodiment of pragmatism who looks at the world in a pragmatic and wise manner. His pragmatism and wisdom proved useful with whoever accompanied him or enjoyed his service. He was a good force that tried to neutralize Jim's monomaniac revenge. He tried a lot to advice Jim and make him return to his reason. He, like Sapt and Fagin, tried to change Jim's mind which was obsessed with killing Tylo Frip, but he failed though his wisdom did not fail him at the end. He was against Boxtel; the force that instigated Jim against Tylo Frip and sailors. He felt happy for Boxtel's participation in fighting Tylo Frip. At the end, when he became the only survival who was sitting on a floating wood, Morgan says, "My wisdom saved my life" in a clear indication to the fact that Jim was a victim of his own foolishness and depravity of any sense of wisdom. The scene in which Morgan was sitting on, just, a floating wood in the wide ocean fills the heart of the reader with awe, particularly, when the reader realizes that not only Tylo Frip was around, but also many sharks were roaming around the floating wood to tear Morgan and deprive Jim's family from even the opportunity of

knowing what had happened to Jim, but the good fate served him and he was rescued by Bill's ship.

Morgan represents a world that refused to confront nature, therefore, he survived to reform Rosa who was not aware of the details of the tragic result of that confrontation which took place between Jim and the whale. His survival became a warning to Rosa against instigating anyone else to repeat a doomed confrontation against the forces of nature. He remained loyal and loving to Jim and his family. After the death of Jim and while he was sitting on the floating-wood in the vast sea, his loyalty to Jim never faded away even during his sleeping. As he was sleeping on the floating wood, he dreamed about that loyalty in his own way. The narrator says, "He dreamt that he was at home. He saw that he went with Jim to the market to help him in his business." Morgan returned to New York and informed the authorities about what happened to the ship, sailors and what Jim had done and what was his fate. He found that the port authorities, being part of the fishing and whaling industry, were also nursing the same attitudes of Jim towards Tylo Frip. They considered it as destroyer of trade. Consequently, the reader reads resentment on the face of Morgan. His attitudes towards those who want to mobilize warships and move them to kill Tylo Frip, his words to them regarding this issue and his departure without saying goodbye show Morgan's wisdom and suggest his vision that man will never succeed in defeating the forces of nature.

Morgan went to Jim's house and told Rosa about the death of Jim. His words for her were a kind of moral slap to her which reformed her. His good personality and his sincere and noble nature made him an unforgettable character in the novel. Though he was the sole survivor of the second fishing and whaling journey, he did not relate the story of the novel, but he became the mouthpiece of the novelist and one of the unforgettable characters in the world of sea-adventure novels. The reader fully sympathizes with him and rather loves him.

Systen

Systen is one of the five officers on the ship; Lingnerland, in its first fishing and whaling journey. He was working as an officer in the customs department of the port, but he liked to accompany Jim in the fishing and whaling journey as he was on a holiday. He was well-acquainted with professional hunters, therefore, he suggested to Jim to take Taigo as he was a strong hunter. His short presence in the novel projected the superstitious mentality of the society of that time. Like Sapt, Systen is a superstitious character who is haunted by strange teachings which are claimed to be Christian, but they have no relation with any logic. He represents prejudiced and puritanical assumptions which do not allow a pagan to accompany the so-called Christians in a fishing and whaling journey, but they are ready to let pagans who are skilled in fishing and whaling to join the crew. It seems that he projected the interpolated religion of

the industry of fishing and whaling and not the authentic teachings which had been revealed to the prophet Jesus *pbuh*. Through Systen, the novel reflected the tendency of some people to fabricate religious and superstitious ideas to serve the prejudiced structure of their mentality and that of the society, but they are ready to sacrifice those religious and superstitious ideas for sake of commercial purposes. He stood at the gate of the ship and allowed only the Christians to board the ship, but for the sake of a good hunt, he was ready to allow even the pagans to board the ship if they have exceptional skills in fishing and whaling. In other words, when professionalism in the art of fishing and whaling proves itself, Systen was ready to slap his superstitions and the so-called Christianity with the wall. Therefore, he exempted the African idol-worshippers from that condition as they are strong and will help the business. He allowed even a 'cannibal' to board the ship as he was a strong man who is useful in such a commercial journey.

Systen was inexperienced in the skill of whaling and became a victim of that lack of experience. He proved his lack of experience and became the first victim of Tylo Frip. He did not listen to Shomo's warning not to stand on the timber bar of the ship while spearing Tylo Frip. Consequently, he lost his balance and fell into the sea. Tylo Frip hit him by its tail and throw him high into the air. He fell into the sea and disappeared forever. His death did not deter Sikes from confronting Tylo Frip or realizing its potential danger. However, his death was not the actual reason

behind confronting Tylo Frip in the second journey, rather, the death of Sikes was the main reason behind confronting it. Thus, Systen's death passed just like the death of any fish. This exposes the merciless nature of the fishing and whaling industry represented in Jim who does not bother about the death of a person like Systen, but mobilizes all sailors to take a personal revenge because Sikes took a reckless decision to fight a sea-beast and got killed in the course of doing so. This shows that millions of people who are like Systen are there in the world. They are working with a wild industry which employs them and does not bother about their lives.

Sapt

Sapt is one of the officers on Lingnerland. He is a good fisherman, but was not knowing very much about the orca whale more than saying, "That whale is very dangerous." He became in charge of steering the ship to New York in the wake of the death of Sikes. In the second journey, he was standing at the gate of the ship to control the entrance of people. In this regard, he is like Systen; a superstitious who bothered about the faiths of the sailors who board the ship. He stopped Taigo; the idol worshipper, from boarding the ship till Taigo showed him his skill in using spear by shooting the door's nail accurately.

He was against Jim's plan to confine the second journey for killing Tylo Frip. Thus, he was a natural ally of Fagin and Morgan and, naturally, like Fagin and Morgan, he was against

Boxtel. He was described by Boxtel as a stupid, but at the end, Boxtel proved himself to be stupid. Sapt possessed a kind of boldness which was rare among the sailors on Lingnerland; except Fagin. He stands for those who confront the wrong bravely and without any fear. When Darnay said that Jim was against commercial hunting, Sapt said, "We don't care about Jim nor do we care about the weather…Hunting whales is very important. The reason behind our journey isn't only killing Tylo Frip. That is folly. We have to generate some income from hunting whales." Sapt confronted Jim's insistence on remaining on high seas till he kills Tylo Frip. He said to Jim, "…we want to go home….Go and take revenge alone. We don't want to die with you." When Sapt faced Jim, he pushed Jim to the ground, but he was weaker than Jim. His belly was kicked by Jim who also threatened to kill him. Consequently, Sapt went through medical observation. He, along with Fagin, were forbidden from entering Jim's room. He considered Jim to be mentally ill and going to harm his men. Therefore, he recommended a psychiatric checkup for Jim. When Jim killed Fagin, he raised his voice and said to Jim "What have you done, Jim? Did you kill him because he only cursed you?" At the end, Sapt was one of those few members of the crew who remained onboard of the ship and did not accompany those who went to fight Tylo Frip. When Tylo Frip destroyed the ship; Lingnerland, Sapt got drowned along with George and the cooks. Despite his superstitious mentality,

his bold confrontations with Jim made him an unforgettable character in the novel.

Boxtel

Boxtel is the neighbor of Jim in New York. He is an eccentric and mysterious character whose intentions remained vague till the end of the novel and the reader finds difficulty in knowing what motivated him to instigate Jim to kill Tylo Frip and those who oppose him. He even tried to give Jim money to encourage him to continue fighting Tylo Frip! He was aware of the desire of Jim's wife to take revenge against Tylo Frip. Therefore, he can be considered as the true representative of Rosa on the ship. He represents that type of people who never cease fueling instigation into others to move them towards their ulterior plans and make them carry out their reckless motives. His instigation to Jim projected him as one of the major elements of evil in the novel. He stands in sharp contrast to Morgan, Sapt and Fagin. He considered Sapt as stupid and he was considered by Morgan as a devil and a pirate who has a wicked plan against Jim. Jim himself found him sitting in his room and in a moment of spontaneity, which has a deep significance, Jim asked him, "Are you a demon?" Indeed, Boxtel was a demon. He is a man who nurses a deep desire to dash against others and clash with them. It seems that the environment of clashing was conducive with his mindset. He used to sit with Jim in the latter's room, recharge his obstinacy, urge him to go on in his attempt to kill

Tylo Frip. He instigated Jim against Sapt, Fagin and Morgan and urged him to eradicate Fagin. He has gone to the extent of instigating Jim to use his pistol to silence those who oppose him.

There is an ambiguity that surrounds Boxtel's character and motives and he died without giving a chance even to the reader to understand his motives. His psychic structure is strange and difficult to understand, indeed. The narrator described Boxtel's statements by tagging them with adverbs like cunningly, wickedly, etc. He is that kind of man who kidnaps the cause of others, clothes it with his own way of reaction as if it were his own cause and builds up relations with others on the basis of that reaction without possessing any true personal interest in the whole matter. Hence, there is an ambiguity behind his motives. Initially, the reader thinks that he is a man who was in search for administrative role therefore he was snatching away others' causes and acting upon them to create a role for himself. He is an arrogant person who observes, carefully, the hierarchy of social structure and uses it as a weapon, therefore, he asks Morgan to remember that he is supposed to obey his master in each and every order even if it was wrong. Speaking to Jim about Morgan, Boxtel says, "But the honest servant doesn't stop in the way of his master's plans…Get rid of him." However, the benevolent fate makes such a person incapable of climbing the hierarchy of administration otherwise he would have turned to be worse than Jim. Strangely, there was a kind of weakness in Jim in front of Boxtel in spite of Jim's strength in front of all

characters. Boxtel played on the string of revenge motive and controlled over Jim's mind. He gave Jim an interpretation of his dream that serves his whims. He instigated Jim and made him get more haunted with the idea of killing Tylo Frip and become ready to extinguish whoever opposes him. Hence, Boxtel was obsessed with the most evilly side of the motive of killing Tylo Frip because he was instigating Jim to kill everyone who tries to divert his attention far away from the task of killing Tylo Frip. However, Jim was not agreeing with all what Boxtel says. It means that he was not allowing Boxtel to take him to the extremes of killing others, but it can be said that, Boxtel's instigation to Jim contributed to the murdering of Fagin, destroying the ship and the death of Jim himself and other sailors. He has gone to the extent of threatening to kill Morgan and was in fact about to stab him with a knife if Jim did not interfere and stop him. Therefore, he was despised by Morgan who rejoiced Boxtel's participation in the direct fighting against Tylo Frip as Morgan was knowing that he will perish in that fighting. He was resembled to a spider as he clung on Tylo Frip's back and caught the dorsal fin strongly. He tried to show an experience in fighting Tylo Frip, but it was cleverer than him. It took a deep breath, dived deep into the sea and when Boxtel tried to come up to the surface, it forbade him from surfacing till he got suffocated and died. Then, it cut him into two parts. The way Boxtel acted with Tylo Frip was fatal, therefore, Jim warned his men against doing as Boxtel had done.

Through Boxtel, the novelist wanted his novel to have a sense of crude evil and mystery because it is difficult to know the motive behind Boxtel's instigation to Jim to fight Tylo Frip and kill whoever stands on his way to do it. It seems that by creating the character of Boxtel, the novelist wanted to say that the society has always members like Boxtel who are ambiguous and understandable and it is better for man to listen to such people critically and never take what they say for granted and without weighing it.

Fagin

Fagin was one of the wisest men on the ship; Lingnerland. He, Sapt and Morgan were the voices of reason on the ship. He looks into matters, pragmatically, rationally and wisely, but he became a victim of his pragmatism, wisdom and rationality. He was not agreeing with Jim's reckless motive that pushes him to confront Tylo Frip. He advised Jim to change his attitude towards Tylo Frip and free his mind from the "mad plans" which were occupying it. However, his advice was not accepted by Jim. Rather, he was threatened by Jim to be thrown tied into the sea. In fact, he was against the whole idea of killing Tylo Frip. Therefore, he confronted Jim and his plan which confine the whole journey only for killing Tylo Frip. He was critical of Jim and whatever he says and never agreed with him. He replied to Jim's saying, "If we kill Tylo Frip, we must eat its meat" by saying, "How? Orca's meat is not eatable." Jim angrily

says to him, "We will do that…Nothing can stop us." Still Fagin wanted to explain his opinion by saying, "I am not trying to stop you. You may eat it, but its meat may be harmful", but Jim arrogantly pays back by saying to him, "How silly! You are just joking…Stop talking and finish your meal. The crew will eat Tylo." This argument shows the extent of disparity and gap of thinking between the two sides. Unfortunately, Fagin's opinions were not capable of influencing the members of the crew who were running with Jim the way the foal runs with its mother-horse. When Jim says, "The crew will eat Tylo", they foolishly cheer "We will, we will." This depicts not only the dangers of the authoritarian tendencies which dominate the society and mold it according to the whims of the authoritarian power even in the presence of opposition, but also indicates that if there is only one rational opponent among stupid people who do not have intellects to reason, then that single opponent will never be able to change the course of action in favor of reason and intellect because people are brainless and donkeyed. Therefore, Fagin was a sad victim of such a donkeyed environment despite he, along with Sapt and Morgan, symbolize rationality and reason. Nevertheless, Fagin's conviction that the journey must be for fishing and whaling purpose and it should not be confined, solely, to kill Tylo Frip, was essentially nursed by many members of the crew, but under the influence of the strong character of Jim, his propaganda and the attraction of the box of

gold-coins, the position of people like Fagin will be slapped with the wall.

Fagin was a kind man. His kindness is observed when the narrator depicts his reaction towards Jim's intention to lower the boats and participate in fighting Tylo Frip. At then, Fagin stood in front of Jim, his eyes were full of tears and he said, "Sir, don't kill yourself…The whale was about to cut your leg. We don't want to lose you. You are our captain. You have a family waiting for you. Forget about that whale." Nevertheless, despite these kind words and gestures, he was pushed by the uncompassionate Jim to the ground. He was considered by Jim as "a nag man" and a source of irritation for him. Therefore, such a tense relation between Fagin and Jim produced that tragedy which ended Fagin's life through a bullet which was shot at his head by Jim. That tense relation continued even after the death of Fagin, but this time it was not in favor of Jim. Fagin's spirit started haunting and torturing Jim till the last moment of his life. It means that when Fagin was alive, he was a 'nag man' and his advices were a source of irritation to Jim and after Fagin's death, his gazing eyes chased Jim and his spirit continued to haunt, irritate and rather torture Jim in many ways. Fagin's advices were right, but with a man of a psychopathic structure like Jim who is obsessed with taking revenge, such advices were a source of irritation that turned him into a criminal. It can be said that Fagin, was killed by an uncompassionate revenging force that does not accept others' opinions. The murder of Fagin indicates that many wise

and rational people are there on earth, but they become victims of those who lack reason, wisdom, rationality and compassion. The reader, fully, sympathizes with Fagin as he is one of the unforgettable characters and victims of the stories of the sea-journeys.

Taigo

Taigo is an idolator, but he was a well-built, a strong and a hefty black African hunter. He was praised by Systen for his skill in hunting therefore he was invited to join the first journey, but he could not join it as he was ill. Jim and Morgan were keen to take him in the second journey. He joined the second journey and proved his spearing skill to Sapt right from the beginning. When Taigo came to board the ship, Sapt stopped him, but he convinced Sapt of his spearing skill by throwing the spear and shooting a door's nail from far away. He was described by Darnay as "useful and skillful man." Other sailors described him as "very skillful." He was well acquainted with the physical description of Tylo Frip. It means that he had seen and encountered it in a previous journey; before two years, when it had been stealing sailors' hunt. He was the last to die just before Jim who was keen to save him so as to use him against Tylo Frip, but Tylo Frip fell on his body while he was swimming towards Jim's boat, pulled him deep into the water and tore him into pieces. The reader remembers him as one of those sailors who

were, fully, involved in Jim's revenging mission without any opposition or objection.

Robert

Robert was a material-minded sailor. He was keen on getting the box of gold-coins. It seems that the idea of getting the box of gold-coins haunted him to the extent that he considered a brown squid to be Tylo Frip. He got involved in an unceasing monitoring of the sea in order to spot Tylo Frip. Therefore, like Taigo, he was, fully, involved in Jim's revenging task without any opposition or raising any question. Through his character, the reader realizes that the novelist employed psychology to probe to which extent self-interest and lie can affect human behavior, manipulate him and make him a gear in the machine of the liar.

Shomo

Shomo is one of the four African hunters, but he was a cannibal as Systen claimed. However, like Taigo, he was a professional hunter who possesses experience in shooting spears. Being a cannibal, as Systen claims, Shomo's character sends a sense of awe in the heart of the reader and the reader remains asking the reasons which made Jim and the rest of the crew take a cannibal with them in a fishing and whaling journey. Nevertheless, throughout the journey, there was no sign of cannibalism in him. Rather, he was keen on the safety of sailors.

He warned Systen not to stand on the timber bar of the ship, but the latter did not bother about Shomo's advice, consequently, he fell into the sea and got killed by Tylo Frip. When Tylo Frip destroyed his boat, fear dominated Shomo. He requested Jim to escape and find a safe haven, but Jim did not bother about his request. Rather, he was forced to continue fighting Tylo Frip till he was killed by it. Nevertheless, it becomes clear that Shomo represents the skill of fishing and whaling that can't be done away with by the industry of fishing and whaling even if he were really a cannibal as Systen claimed.

George

George is a doctor on Lingnerland. He was dealing with the physical and mental health of the sailors. His medical advices to Jim were not taken seriously because Jim's mind was dominated by taking revenge. He became one of the victims of the destruction and drowning of Lingnerland.

Bill

Bill is the captain of the ship called Todoshima. He is the most important captain, among other captains, as he advised Jim to avoid confrontation with Tylo Frip, saved Morgan, employed him, employed Jim's sons and remained, till the end of the novel critical of Jim and considered him to be stupid. He represents a sharp contrast to Jim. He was aware of the danger of Tylo Frip and warned Jim against going into a

confrontation with it. He told Jim about his men's confrontation with Tylo Frip and its deadly result. He stands for the industry of fishing and whaling which continues to deal with nature and its resources in a pragmatic manner. He was interested only in catching tuna and hunting whales and not in fighting against Tylo Frip or confronting it. His advices were not liked by Jim. In fact, he was expelled by Jim to his ship. After the death of Jim, Bill's ship saved Morgan. He got the news about the fate of Jim from Morgan. After hearing about Fagin's murder, he considered Jim to be a murderer and "an arrogant man." Describing Jim's arrogance, Bill says, "I told him about my battle against the whale and advised him not to confront it, but he put mud into his ears. He didn't listen to me at all. He was a stupid man, indeed. Why did he devote his whole journey to fight a whale? Has he forgotten that this whale is very clever and dangerous?" Bill's ship became the place where Morgan continued the profession of fishing and whaling. He employed also the sons of Jim who took up the profession of their father. The reader likes the character of Bill and his professional maturity.

Revenge as a Major Theme of the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

The major or main theme of a work of art is its central idea or apparent topic. The work of art may possess many themes. It may make some of its themes clear for every sensuous reader and some others are stated in such a way that needs intellectual probing. The novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is no exception. It may nurse many themes which a critic may find by handling aspects such as stubbornness and obstinacy of Jim, rigidness of Jim's attitude and behavior, political flavor in Jim's campaign against Tylo Frip, psycho-analysis of human and animal behavior, the perpetual conflict between man and nature, death, etc. For example, the theme of death is dominant in the novel and it became the fate of almost all characters except Morgan. Obstinacy is a paramount theme in the novel. It is the obstinacy of Rosa which convinced Jim to take Sikes in the planned fishing and whaling journey. It is the obstinacy of Sikes which led to convince Jim to allow him to confront Tylo Frip and consequently he died in that confrontation. It is the obstinacy of Jim that doomed the ship, its sailors and Jim himself. Throughout the novel, the character of Jim is an embodiment of obstinacy that produced nervousness, anger, shouting and loss of control over self. In his attempt to kill Tylo Frip, Jim was ready to sail even to the poles of the earth; northern and southern. Obstinacy became one of the characteristics of Jim which made him think

about nothing, but to do what he wants to do; killing Tylo Frip. After the death of Sikes, it is the obstinacy of Jim which continued to create the actions of the novel. It is the obstinate insistence of Jim on fighting Tylo Frip which diverted the journey of fishing and whaling and turned it into a journey of taking revenge against a sea-beast. The novelist seems to be saying that obstinacy has always negative consequences and costly outcomes. It can be seen mainly through the actions of Rosa, Jim, Sikes and Boxtel. It led them to suffer the most pain of all. Their obstinacy, irreversibly, affected their lives and the lives of those who were around them. Ultimately, their obstinacy resulted in their grief and suffering of some of them and the death of others.

The perpetual conflict between man and nature is an ingrained theme of the novel and it can be considered as one of its main themes. The novel seems to say that the perpetual conflict corrupted everything and everyone on earth. This is a historical reality which is warned not only by this novel, but also even by religion before almost fifteen centuries. The holy Quran says, "Corruption (sins, disobedience, etc.) has appeared on land and sea due to what people's hands have done (oppression, exploitation, evil deeds, etc.), therefore, Allah may make them taste a part of what they have done so that they may return (by repenting to Allah, and begging His Pardon)." The relation between man and nature will not be in a good term unless man mends up his ways of dealing with nature. The novel, with its

literary and thematic gesture of a new confrontation between Tylo Frip and the warships, wanted to tell the reader that people like Jim will always exist and conflict between nature and man will go on. When Morgan returned from that disastrous journey in which Jim and the sailors were killed, an officer in the port asked him, "That whale is hampering trade. We must kill it" so as to justify continuing the vicious circle of conflict between man and nature. It is a vicious circle that never ends up and therefore, both, man and nature are suffering and the main reason behind this suffering is man and not nature.

Another theme of the novel can be the weakness of man before the forces of nature. The topic of sincere and faithful friendship is also prevalent in the novel. It is gestured through Morgan; the sincere servant who remained sincere to Jim and his family and even took care of Jim's orphans after his death. An apparent topic of the novel is also the limited knowledge which many people possess about the dangers that lurk in seas and oceans. Only through visiting a scientist of sea-life and asking the passing-by ships, Jim used to gather information about Tylo Frip. The black hunters and their role in supporting the existing industry also can be discussed as a short topic. Hence, the events of the novel offer a multidimensional scope for thematic and topical interpretations. This indicates the richness of the thematic and philosophical dimensions of the novel which give ample room to critics to say a lot about its topics, themes and philosophical aspects.

However, the most prominent theme of the novel 'The Legendary Whale' is revenge. It is a paramount theme in the novel. It is a theme that can be found pervasively in it. Generally, every common reader knows that the theme of revenge is a common motive in this novel. In fact, the course and progress of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' are driven by the motive of taking revenge. It moves the entire novel forward and creates its actions. It projects the actual course of the novel. It is the central meaning and the dominant idea which provide a unifying point around which the plot, the narration, the characters, the setting and the point of view of the author develop and move forward.

'The Legendary Whale' is about the experience of a man who lost his son in a fight against a sea-beast; Tylo Frip. Consequently, taking revenge became an excessive obsession with him. The main course and theme of the novel revolves around the motive of taking revenge against a sea-animal which acts instinctively and does not have any deliberate antagonism against humans. It is a motive that is undertaken and instigated by revenge-ridden characters; Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Boxtel. It is revenge that gave the novel its narrative flow, dramatic elements and philosophical dimension. The novel would have been boring and even ended up without any significance if Jim had not undertaken the task of taking revenge against Tylo Frip. Thus, taking revenge became central to the main conflict in the novel. It is this motive for taking revenge that created conflict, moved the actions and the narrative thread of the novel forward, fostered

its plot and gave deep thematic and philosophical dimensions to the novel. Through the motive of revenge, the novelist steered the actions and events of the story to sustain and reinforce the philosophical messages of the novel. The thematic concern of the motive of revenge rotated around the presentation of the conflict between the recklessness of man and a force of nature that acts to survive. In the process of this conflict, the narration thread has been developed and extended up to the end of the novel, the plot has been structured and the theme of revenge has been expressed effectively.

Revenge has been incarnated not only through Jim's antagonism towards Tylo Frip, but also through the reaction of Jim to everything and everybody around him; people, nature and even himself. The novelist employed Jim's antagonism towards Tylo Frip and projected his reaction to those who were around him effectively to build up the actions and events of the story and employ them to develop the theme of revenge. Hence, the revenge motive drove the novel up to the end and determined the fate of those who were onboard of Lingnerland.

Initially, the novel opens with the description of the luxurious life of Jim which was established by the boons that he had got from sea. When Rosa asked Jim to take Sikes with him so that he may learn the profession of fishing and whaling, he initially hesitated as the sea may turn to be dangerous sometimes, but later on he agreed to take Sikes with him. As they departed and started fishing, the naughty whale; Tylo Frip, which eats

what they catch, encountered them. The sailors became angry. Systen tried to spear it, but he fell into the sea and got killed by the whale. Sikes insisted on confronting and killing that whale, but he died in that confrontation and consequently the fire of taking revenge was ignited in the heart of Jim and more wood was added to it by Rosa who asked him to take revenge against the whale and made it a condition for the revival of good terms with Jim. Boxtel also, for an unknown reason, instigated Jim to go on in his revenging task. Hence, the idea that things may not go smoothly has been suggested early in the novel through pondering about the hazards of the sea and the risky nature of taking Sikes in the planned journey. Taking revenge was initiated in chapter 7, when its elements and requirements were fully established in the wake of the death of Sikes. Thus, the main theme of the novel is revenge, but its thematic elements were not introduced till Tylo Frip encountered Jim's sailors for the first time, took away their hunt and killed Systen and Sikes. In other words, from the end of chapter seven and the beginning of chapter eight; in the second journey, the motive to take revenge became the major idea of the novel and the driving force that controlled the mind of the main character; Jim, created the actions of the novel and affected the lives of all characters.

The course of the novel shows that many ships were facing the same problem faced by Jim, but they were not initiating a systematic revenge against the whale as Jim did. The novelist wants to say that the conflict and the subsequent revenge started

because Jim insisted on troubling nature in its own seat. He went to nature in its own seat and not the vice versa. He mobilized the world around him and did not put it down till he extinguished his own life and the lives of those who were around him. In other words, taking revenge was adopted and launched by Jim against the legendary, clever and strong whale; Tylo Frip, which was provoked while acting instinctively and the consequences of that unnecessary provocation were disastrous for those who launched it and even for the innocent people who were around the provoker; Jim despite the fact that Tylo Frip did not have any aggressive tendencies towards anybody. It was just satisfying its hunger and it was not planning to take more than the amount of food which sufficient with it, but sailors, including Jim, took it as a sign of deliberate aggression and an act of business-destroying and therefore they went for an open confrontation with it. This misunderstanding of the instinct of a sea-beast made Jim decide to consider it a business-destroyer which required to be confronted and consequently, in the process of that confrontation, he lost one of his sailors; Systen, and then his son; Sikes. The death of Sikes loaded Jim with the motive to take revenge and therefore he organized another fishing and whaling journey which was solely dedicated by him to avenge the death of his son and kill Tylo Frip. He mobilized everyone and everything to accomplish his personal motive. As the novel progresses, the reader is exposed to a strong sense and rather a chronic aspect of the motive of taking revenge which Jim nursed

and acted according to its dictates to the extent that it affected his mental balance and human relation. The motive of taking revenge got hold of Jim, made him obsessed only with it and nothing else, loaded him with antagonism and therefore he experienced a form of chronic loss of reason, rationality and wisdom. It made him ready to kill anybody who comes on his way of killing Tylo Frip. It drove him to take extreme measures and actions that turned him into a criminal and rather a murderer and led him to his own death. He confronted the anti-revenge faction which consisted of Sapt, Fagin and Morgan who opposed his revenging project that threatened the lives of the whole crew. Jim exploited all means to engage them in his mad revenging journey. Consequently, revenge has been made a goal at a cost which harmed even innocent people on the ship. It has its disastrous ramifications on sailors.

The revenging motive has been supported by Jim's propaganda to motivate sailors to get fully involved in it. To ignite the motive of taking revenge in the sailors, Jim addresses them by saying, "You must understand that Tylo Frip is the trade destroyer. We will sail around the whole world in search for it. I shall not allow you to return to New York till we kill it. Then, we will take its body to the beach, cut its meat into pieces and put it in restaurants." Jim's revenging propaganda influenced some sailors and made them shout, "Death to Tylo Frip!" The motive of taking revenge in Jim used different means such as luring sailors with gold-coins, threatening them, etc., so as to control

over the thinking of sailors and therefore it had not been affected by the positions of the opposers. In this way, he controlled the thinking of many fishermen and directed them to accomplish his personal revenge. Through Jim's propaganda, the novelist presented a high level of human skill in indoctrinating, mobilizing and dragging people behind personal motives. However, some sailors did not follow Jim in his revenging tendencies. For example, Fagin was not carried away by such a propaganda, indoctrination or mobilization. Therefore, he said, "Mr. Fritz, I am ready to fight that ugly whale. I'll accept if that was the part of the whales hunting program which we went out for and not to carry out a revenge on Tylo Frip." Sapt and Morgan were also bearing views similar to those of Fagin. In fact, the majority of the fishermen were not in favor of making the motive of revenge a main objective of their presence onboard of Lingnerland as they wanted to fish and whale for commercial purposes. A sailor questioned the essence of the reason behind fighting Tylo Frip. He felt pity for the whale and asked, "Why do we want to kill it?" "It's just a type of dolphins and it is doing what whales usually do," he added. Such questions and statements may coincide with the opinions of Fagin, Sapt and Morgan, but they were opposed to the convictions of characters like Jim, Rosa and Boxtel and some sailors who had been numbed by the Jim's prevailing narrative, propaganda and material luring. Under Jim's strong mobilizing propaganda, a few sailors maintained wisdom, rationality and reason, but they

were helpless in front of Jim's physical and financial strength and influencing propaganda. It means that in the process of taking revenge, Jim employed his 'main-stream' narrative and exploited two factors to mobilize sailors: The first factor was the box of gold-coins and the second factor was in the form of slogans that consider Tylo Frip as a 'trade destroyer'. He used those two factors not to improve sailors' condition and future or return them, safely, to their families, but to mobilize them to accomplish his own personal motive; revenge even if it will cost them their own lives. At the end Jim, his box of gold-coins and sailors whom he mobilized, all, were annihilated and dipped into the sea. Consequently, the desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip affected each and every character onboard of Lingnerland and even Rosa at her home. One of the characters; Fagin, was killed by Jim himself and some others were harassed and lured by him, misled by his slogan; 'Death to Tylo Frio' and the rest became victims of their silence and passiveness. The destruction of Lingnerland by the legendary whale and the death of the sailors; except Moran, ended the revenging motive and relived the reader and every lover of nature despite the human cost that resulted from the destruction of the ship.

Taking revenge became an obsession with Jim. It manifested itself through Jim's actions and sayings. The casual meetings with the captains of various passing-by hunting-ships and the tale of the confrontations of some of them with Tylo Frip did not deter Jim nor did they make him retreat from his

disastrous motive. This exposed the psychic nature and stubbornness of Jim who made taking revenge as his sole mission. It reflected his relentless determination to drive himself and those who were around him to a fatal end. It revealed that Jim's obsession with revenge became almost a pathological case that necessitated medical care. It made Jim think that taking revenge is a way of righting a perceived wrong and he could not realize that he was wrong as he was following a dangerous strategy by trying to take revenge against a sea-creature that acts instinctively. Obsession with taking revenge against a sea-beast brought chaos to the world of Lingnerland which was ordered according to its own fishing and whaling order. It made the reader realize that man troubles the norms of nature through his own wrong deeds which are wrongly perceived to be right. The thematic concern of the novel tells the reader that human beings failed to know that it is this natural instinct of nature which acts spontaneously that enriched seas and oceans and allowed trade in fishing and whaling to continue and prosper for thousands of years. Therefore, trade in fishing and whaling was going on since the depth of history without any necessity for confrontation with nature and its forces. However, any attempt to hamper that spontaneous instinctive act of nature by getting engaged in a vengeance against it will disrupt not only the natural course of nature and its balance, but also human life as a whole. In fact, examining the events of the novel makes the keen-observing reader realize that the theme of revenge in this novel acquires an

existential dimension in the sense that revenging and instinctive worlds can't co-exist at all and the clash or confrontation between them proved to be perpetual, horrific and fatal as indicated in the novel. The obsession with taking revenge led to a series of tragic events that ended in the death of Jim and other sailors except Morgan. It means that the overwhelming and complex motive to take revenge affected Jim and all characters. Consequently, Rosa lost Jim, too after losing her son; Sikes. Therefore, the critical reader predicts that the fate of the warships which were moved to confront Tylo Frip and 'protect the traders in fish and whale's oil' will not be better than those of Lingnerland, Jim and the ill-fated sailors.

The chronic tendency to take revenge dominated the actions of the novel to the extent that the theme of the novel displayed the manifestations of the psychological repercussions of the motive of taking revenge itself. It explored the psychological implications of taking revenge and reflected the extent of the danger of such a motive and its dire consequences on human physical and mental safety. The uncontrollable motive to take revenge engulfed Jim with its mental, psychological and physical ramifications. It dictated the way Jim thinks, acts, reacts and responds to those who are around him. It became an incurable disease and unstoppable motive within Jim. It turned into something more than a personal motive of taking revenge for the death of a son. It dominated the whole being of Jim, shaped his mindset and ill-designed his social relations to the

extent that made him aspire to make the whole world fight for his cause.

The psychological ramifications of the motive of taking revenge reached its peak during Jim's death. Jim underwent a troubled mental state that was dominated by the details of the dream which he had seen, Fagin's face-image, his staring eyes and his spirit that started appearing before Jim and haunting him. It was the counter revenge in its own way of operation. As Jim was descending towards the bottom of the ocean, the spirit of Fagin became like the control-tower of the airport that directs the plane during the process of landing. It whispered into the ears of Jim till his body landed into the bottom of the ocean. Fagin's spirit said to Jim, "You will come with me soon!", "No pain again," "You will come with me in less than one minute," "Next moment! Goodbye." Such a state of mental drama is nothing, but a counter-revenge in its own way. It is a manifestation of the counter revenge which was exercising its own course on Jim. It turns death into a painful process of psychological annihilation that is worse than the physical death through a bullet in the head! It depicts the grim psychological condition of Jim just before his death and projects what a criminal undergoes when he kills an innocent person. It reflects the complete inner destruction which Jim had experienced before his death. Here, the counter revenge offers its metaphysical repercussions that is concerned with the presentation of the problem and its reality rather than dealing with a solution. The mental structure of Jim acquired a dimension

in which the conscious and the subconscious continued to submerge and intermingle with each other to produce a fluid of mental state; 'stream of consciousness' that tortures the culprit; Jim, for a crime that he had committed. This counter revenge gives the character of, both, Jim and Fagin a symbolic significance and existential dimensions which reflects the fact that, for a human being, suffering in some way or another is unavoidable, particularly for the criminals. It made the theme of revenge wear its philosophical and existential clothing that opens the door for many unanswerable questions to intrude human mind. Jim became a symbol of taking revenge; blind and armed revenge, while Fagin became a symbol of a helpless victim that did not possess more than just a tongue which opposes and confronts the motive of taking revenge and a dead face with opened-and-gazing eyes and a whispering spirit which were the strongest weapons of taking a counter revenge that even Jim did not possess and could not resist or escape its repercussions. The confrontation between the physical and supernatural makes the reader realize that people like Fagin and Jim are many in the society. They come and go, but people never open their eyes to the causes of the criminality, victimization or annihilation in the society. They fail even to open their eyes the way the dead eyes of Fagin did to blame Jim for victimizing him. Therefore, even after such a disaster, the custom's officers are ready to move, again, warships to confront Tylo Frip and continue on an endless confrontation between man and nature to produce new 'Jim' and

'Fagin'; new revenging motives and murdering. The warships which were moved to fight Tylo Frip symbolize the uninterrupted human desire to continue dominating and exploiting nature while Tylo Frip is a symbol of the unceasing rage of nature that will continue to show man the consequences of what his hands commit. Thus, taking revenge in this novel becomes something more than a mere process of taking revenge for the death of a son. It acquires a powerful symbolic significance that raises the attention of man to the destructive and disastrous dimensions of taking revenge, particularly, when it is between man and nature. In such a case, taking revenge becomes a doom to man and displaces him not only from his family, but also from life itself. Hence, the theme of revenge produced its own ramified symbolic and existential dimensions. It produced supernatural dimensions which haunted Jim and tortured him. In other words, the spirit of Fagin continued to torture Jim till he died. It seems that the spirit of Fagin wanted to take revenge in its own way and its torturing to Jim seems to be severer than getting killed by a bullet in the head, devoured by the jaws of a whale or suffocated during drowning. It was not only a process of undergoing physical annihilation, but also going through a long pipe of psychic torturing as that Jim has experienced just before his death. This indicates that there were many factors which worked to instate the course of justice and reason after a long time of their absence, but in this process, the human cost was very high. Many innocent people like the cookers, the

doctor; George, and other sailors died though they did not deserve that tragic end, but the novelist wants to tell us that, in the process of ending mad revenging motives and reinstating reason, wisdom, rationality and justice, even innocent people become victims of not only their own passiveness or silence, but also of the evils of the world around them which they could not confront. In this regard, many victims were passive and rather acted in such a way that serves the domination of the motive of revenge. They were either helpless characters like George and the cooks or under the influence of material attraction; box of gold coins and Jim's 'mainstream' narration like those characters who became foolish chanters of the slogans that appease Jim. This shows the extent of what an ulterior motive; whether it was taking revenge or pursuing political and economic interest, can go in the process of molding people, mobilizing them, controlling over them, donkeying them, misdirecting their energies and using them for its own ulterior ends.

Hence, the core value at stake in the novel is the motive of taking revenge that projected a conflict between man and nature in which man consumes himself in his obstinate determination to confront forces of nature. The fate of the Lingnerland and its crew reflected the futility of getting engaged in taking revenge or confronting the forces of nature. The reader wonders why Jim has taken the matter of taking revenge, seriously, to the extent of subjecting himself and his crew to the dangers of the sea and getting killed in the process of carrying out ferocious

confrontations although nothing forced him to do so except his obstinacy and obsession with taking revenge. The desire to take revenge got hold of Jim and forced him to confront Tylo Frip at all costs. It means that Jim acted on his own choice to take revenge against a force of nature and reaped the dire consequences of fighting against it. He thought that the impulse of tit-for-tat will pay back and be in his favor, but he was wrong and could not perceive the looming danger that springs from wrong perceptions. He could not realize that such a reckless strategy does not work with nature because in the process of trying a tit-for-tat strategy, the avenger will destroy nature and he himself will become a direct victim of that destruction. Thus, the novelist wanted to say that seeking revenge can lead to pain, destruction and even death. The novel wanted to say that nursing a sense of taking revenge and moving or acting according to its dictates pump toxic emotions that intoxicate the mental balance to the extent that escalates actions to the level of self-destruction and mass-killing. The confrontation between the two opposing fronts; namely, Jim and Tylo Frip, reached to its peak and every front felt the disastrous consequences of that confrontation. Jim died and Tylo Frip sustained many injuries, but it came out triumphant to suggest for the reader that, in any confrontation between man and nature, it is the nature that will prevail despite the damages it sustains. Any attempt to confront the forces of nature in the name of taking revenge, is a suicidal act that will victimize man himself. It is only the human being who will be a

loser of not only his life, but also of that beautiful aspects of nature which decorate life around human existence and shower prosperity upon human life. Hence, the novelist guided, effectively, the reader to the summit of the events where he wanted to reach and where he found that the main character lost what he wanted to reach. He explained to the reader that the obsession with taking revenge against a force of nature had its own tragedy, costs and losses. He points out that Jim's shot against Tylo Frip was not as accurate as that which he directed against Fagin and killed him, rather, his shot against Tylo Frip went awry because humans may be successful in fighting and killing each other, but they can't fight the forces of nature because disasters will result from confronting them

The novelist dramatized his concerns about nature and made the reader realize that confronting nature created a tragic end for those who entered into a conflict with nature and made the heart of the reader aches for the loss of those characters such as Sapt, Fagin, George and the cooks who became victims of the confrontation between the forces of exploiting nature and acting aggressively against it on the one hand and the forces of nature that act instinctively for feeding and protecting themselves on the other hand. The death of the villains; Jim or Boxtel, did not cause any sense of tragedy or sympathy in the heart of the reader. The tragedy in the novel, actually, emanates from the death of the innocent people who adhered to the values of life, returning to family and leaving nature to its own, but they became victims of

Jim's mad mission of taking revenge. As Jim warned sailors against acting like Boxtel by riding the back of the whale and thinking that it will be a successful way of killing it, the novelist warned human beings against acting like Jim and riding the back of the motive of taking revenge in general or directing it against nature in particular. Thus, the novel reveals the fact that unjustified avenging is a doomed motive that leads the avenger to nowhere except self-destruction and self-annihilation. At the end of the novel, it turned into a revenge which is carried out by a villain; a murderer.

The projection of revenge in the novel is a reflection of the authors vision of nature, environment and their treasures and the importance of protecting and conserving them against human whims. It is an embodiment of the novelist's deep love for nature and its treasures and his desire to protect nature against human recklessness. He observed the destructive exploitation of nature by his fellow beings and saw that no political or environmental forces are capable of stopping human aggressiveness, greed and exploitation of nature. Therefore, he tried to project the problem from a literary point of view to entertain, enlighten and educate man and at the same time warn him against the consequences of his recklessness in dealing with nature and its treasures. Through literary depiction of the revenge motive and its consequences, the novelist wanted to say that the force which protects nature and its treasures will not come from among human beings, but from nature itself and it will defeat human recklessness. Therefore, he

wrote this novel and depicted human recklessness through Jim and engineered his fatal end through Tylo Frip. The motive for taking revenge and its consequences in this novel reflect the complicated relationship between man and nature, man and natural resources and man and the treasures of nature. Through Tylo Frip, the novelist projected the nature's force that will confront human 'madness' and defeat it. He created the unnamed narrator to be his voice and made Tylo Frip a legendary example of the forces of nature which the novelist wants them to emerge and stop irresponsible human deeds. It is a legendary force that acted effectively to confront human irrationality and tell human beings that if they continue acting in that irrational manner which trespasses the privacy of nature and does not give consideration to the particularity of nature and the importance of understanding its instinctive aspects, then they will suffer and get defeated.

The final outcome of the motive of revenge in this novel indicates that the novelist criticized those who indulge in taking revenge and recklessly collide with others. The motive of taking revenge created poignant events that incarnated a tragic end to many of those who became impulsive and confronted natural forces which act instinctively without nursing any deliberate antagonism towards human beings. The novel indicates that it is the human interference and aggression which are damaging nature and creating human suffering and environmental problems. The novelist wanted to say that nature only wants to be left on its own to manage its affairs without human

interference, aggression or exploitation. If nature is left on its own, both, human beings and nature will benefit from each other without harming each other and, both, humanity and nature will prosper.

The theme of revenge has been served and sustained by employing many literalized tools such as the recurrent references to ships, boats, spears, knives, etc., which became recurrent images and not just tools for their own general purposes. They served to elaborate the theme of revenge and became tools that helped the novelist to present the act of taking revenge through various events in the novel. They were employed effectively to project the repercussions of making the motive of taking revenge an obsession. Some of them acquired symbolic dimensions. Moreover, the theme of taking revenge was enriched and consolidated by employing dreams, supernatural elements and monologue. The way the unnamed narrator was employed to delineate characters, describe and comment and the role of each and every character contributed to present and enrich the theme of taking revenge. Therefore, taking revenge became a dominant theme that have been effectively projected in the novel.

Religious and Superstitious Remarks and Commercial Interests in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

In the novel 'The Legendary Whale', there are many references which have religious remarks or undertones. The novel projected a culture of fishing and whaling which decrees that only Christians should board the fishing and whaling ship. The whites' society considered Africans as idol worshippers and cannibals who must be avoided and prohibited from boarding those ships. The novel made a sarcastic reference to the so-called Christianity and reflected the stupid puritanical point of views of some characters such as Systen and Sapt who pretended to be true Christians, followed a fabricated legislation that allowed only the Christians to board the ship and attempted to exclude the African idol worshippers and cannibals from boarding it! In the first journey, Systen monitored the process of boarding the ship. He permitted only Christians to board the ship, but the whole rules of boarding the ship were thrown to the wind when it comes to dealing with those who were professional hunters, but they were either pagans or cannibals. He allowed the pagans to board the ship as they were strong, skillful and capable helping the 'industry' of fishing and whaling. He allowed even a 'cannibal' to board the ship as he was a strong man who is useful in such a commercial journey. It means that Systen did away with

the pre-conditions and allowed skillful fishermen and whale hunters who belong to other religions to board the ship.

In the second journey Spat undertook the same task of monitoring those who board the ship. Taigo came. Morgan introduced Taigo to him. Sapt said to Morgan, "What is your name? What is his religion?" Taigo showed Sapt his personal papers. Sapt read them and said, "Your name is Taigo, but you worship the idols…You won't enter the ship." Taigo shot a far nail on the door and thus proved his spearing skill. Consequently, Sapt allowed him to board the ship. It means that fishing and whaling industry will do away with those fabricated rules in order to allow idol worshipers and cannibals to board the ship and help the fishing and whaling industry. It also means that the so-called Christian teachings collapsed under the wheels of the commercial urgency as Christianity itself had collapsed under the domination of aberrant priests who got engaged in aberrant behaviors to the extent that made the church lose its credibility as a true religious institution! The reader realizes that the so-called rules to board the ship are nothing more than superstitions that vaporized away under the commercial urgency of searching for skilled people and employing them. This is exactly what is going on now in the materialistic world which discarded religion, opted for atheism and became ready to employ everybody in its materialistic machinery.

The novel projected also a society that believes in superstitions. When Sheigo dived into the sea to see the source

of the strange voice, the sailors heard the strange voice again. Darnay said, "I think that the ghost saw him and roared." Taisam interpreted the strange voice which he heard as "a ghost or evil spirits swimming in the water." In other words, as Sheigo was dying under the attack of Tylo Frip, the matter was taken easily by those who were onboard of Lingnerland as "a ghost" or "evil spirits swimming in the water." Thus, the novel pointed the finger to the type of the so-called Christianity and the capitalist society which was under the control of strange religious decrees and superstitious mentalities. The strange religious decrees are thrown to the wind in order to run after economic gains. They are discarded if a person proves his skill in the profession and shows that he is capable of supporting the existing industry.

Irrationalism vs Wisdom in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

The novel created a conflict between the opposites; irrationalism and wisdom. Each one was having its own representatives among the characters of the novel. There are characters who embody wisdom and there are characters who incarnate irrationality. The two opposites fought each other with various means that went to the extent of subjecting sailors to the dangers of fighting a sea-beast, threatening, kicking, murdering, etc.

Irrationalism is a strong tendency in the novel. It is the product of the motive of revenge. It contributed to drive the actions of the novel. It was behind many disastrous events in the novel. Many incidents took place as a result of irrational tendencies. The novel showed that the irrationality of human beings gave rise to nature's irrationality. Both confronted each other and the irrationality of human beings was defeated by that of the nature. Irrationally, Sikes insisted on confronting Tylo Frip and irrationally Jim allowed him to do so and consequently Sikes died in the process of that confrontation. Consequently, Jim lost all links with wisdom and rationality and irrationality dominated his mind. He "ran up and down the ship like a mad creature and howled like an animal." He described himself as "a fool… stupid, ugly, clumsy and mad." The kind of relation between Jim and

Rosa, in the wake of the death of Sikes, represents a world where wisdom and rationality disappeared. When Jim came home and told Rosa about what has happened to Sikes, Rosa lost her sense and said to him, "You are a stupid fellow", "you are the most stupid creature in the world." She considered him as a "murderer", "criminal", "wicked man", "cruel." He, on his turn, said to her, "you young devil.", "You deserve the worst.", "Don't let me slap you." He considered Rosa to be deserving the worst. Then, irrationally, Rosa made killing Tylo Frip as a condition to normalize her relationship with Jim. Such a clash between them in the opening of the novel and in the wake of the death of Sikes, makes the reader imagine the extent of the shattered-harmony and the domination of irrationality in Jim's family. The fire of vengeance was ignited in Jim's heart and therefore he organized a new sea-journey and he irrationally made killing of Tylo Frip its main aim.

Jim made the world of irrationality creep into the minds of many sailors. They were made to undergo and experience the overwhelming motive of taking revenge which was controlling over the mind of Jim and therefore they got influenced by Jim's propaganda against Tylo Frip, attracted by the box of gold-coins and therefore they, irrationally, started shouting, "death to Tylo Frip". In order to take revenge, Jim was ready to transcend all limits and do everything; even to eat orca's meat though it is uneatable. Fagin tried to balance Jim's reason and therefore he told him that orca's meat is uneatable and may be harmful. Jim,

rudely, asked Fagin to shup up and said that the crew are ready to eat it. Under the process of irrational mobilization of sailors, he looked at them and said, "Won't you?" They projected their loss of wisdom, rationality and dignity and therefore they shouted, "We will, we will." This indicates that it was the material drive that controlled the mentality of many sailors and not dignity, rationality or wisdom. When Jim said, "The man who will see a brown orca whale will take this box", the narrator comments, "The crew looked at the box with greedy eyes" and shouted, "Hurray, we will." This shows the extent of the irrational mobilization to which many sailors were ready to subject themselves without any sense of dignity, wisdom or rationality.

The irrationality of Jim led to many conflicts between him and fishermen. Fagin and Sapt were the main opposers of Jim's irrational decision to confine the whole fishing and whaling journey to only killing one whale; Tylo Frip. The fishermen wanted to hunt sperm whales for pocket-money while Jim was against hunting them. Jim exhibited signs of mental disorder. Sapt felt that Jim was in need of a psychic check-up by a psychiatric. Under the psychic pressure of the loss of his son, Jim lost his long years of experience in fishing and whaling. He became so obsessed with the idea of taking revenge against Tylo Frip to such an extent that he lost the ability to think rationally. He was ready to sail to the north pole in search for Tylo Frip in spite of the objection of some sailors such as Sapt.

Boxtel started instigating Jim against those who oppose his revenging mission. Jim was listening to Boxtel and getting loaded with his irrational instigations. Jim's irrationality has reached to the extent of expressing his readiness to kill whoever opposes his revenging plans. Threatening to kill sailors became something on the tip of his tongue. He knocked Sapt's belly and killed Fagin. Morgan also tried to change Jim's mind and make him restore his sense, but in vain.

Jim came in contact with the captains of many whaling and fishing ships for a short time, but those contacts revealed and exposed the irrational mindset of Jim and his obsession with vengeance. He refused to accept Bill's advice and, irrationally, asked him to depart to his ship. It was an indirect expelling! He wanted to engage Hawkins; the captain of Interquiek in a fight against Tylo Frip to avenge the death of his father and brother, but the captain of Interquiek was more rational than Jim, therefore, he sailed to New York Safely.

As they were depicted in this novel, the norms of nature and its instincts have been perceived by Jim to be irrational, but, like human world, they have their own world and instincts. Whether they were rational or irrational, they made a balance and coexisted throughout history. They react irrationally only when they face the irrationality of man. The norms of nature and its instincts confronted the irrationality of human beings to produce nothing except the suffering of human beings while nature continued to carry on its normal course of existence despite the

damage it sustains. It seems to tell that it is the duty of man to keep a safe distance from those normal courses of nature whether they were rational or irrational otherwise it is the man who will suffer. If man does not keep a safe distance from the forces of nature, mental tension and physical suffering will be the dominant characteristics of human life.

The disagreement between the two sides about the diverted mission of Lingnerland, confused the aims behind its journey, made characters fight against each other and this resulted in many actions that have been crowned by the most gruesome crimes in the novel; murder of Fagin, and led the ship and the sailors to their final doom. Jim's loss of rationality and wisdom had great repercussions on him and the sailors. The irrational confrontation between Jim and nature made him reap nothing except nightmares and existential dilemmas and this was exactly what Jim experiencing during his last moments of life.

Very few characters such as Morgan, Sapt and Fagin adhered to various degrees of wisdom, but only Morgan was lucky to survive. Thus, the only survivor who came out safely from that irrational world which Jim has established was Morgan. Morgan says, "My wisdom saved my life". Yes, indeed, a degree of wisdom and rationality within Morgan was clear right from the beginning of the novel and throughout the events of the novel. The irrationality of Jim gave rise to nature's self-defense mechanism and when Jim insisted on confronting it, he got defeated by it. The irrationality of Rosa made her lose her son

and husband. Whereas Morgan's rationality engineered his survival and he remained to provide a rational mold to the world of Jim's family and help Rosa to regain her sense and undergo moral rebirth, come to term with her new situation and regret for sending Jim to fight Tylo Frip. Morgan regenerated her morally and consequently she upbrought Jim's orphans far away from nursing any sense of revenge or irrationalism. It means that the regained rationality of Rosa made her admit that it was the irrationality of her tongue which made her lose her son and husband.

The captains of the ships resorted to wisdom and therefore they sailed safely to New York with their ships which were loaded with hunt. Whereas irrationality, exhausted Jim, made him commit crimes and drove him to his final doom. He found what he deserves. Therefore, aptly, an officer in the port said, "Nature, sometime, carries out justice." In fact, the conflict between rationality and irrationality made each group get what it deserves whereas there are some innocent victims such as the doctor and the cooks who suffered from such a situation where irrationalism and wisdom were in a conflict and this is the norm of human society where even innocent people suffer and become victims of the irrational world around them.

Didactic and Moral Elements in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

A didactic literary work is that which entertains, instructs and reforms. The novel: 'The Legendary Whale' contains not only exciting events which grip the reader's attention, but also a strong didactic message which the novelist wanted to convey to the reader. The course of the novel, under critical pressure, releases its didactic significance and warns man against getting involved in any unfair avenging tendencies whether it is against human beings or nature. There are many immortal texts and meanings which were phrased by the novelist to convey a didactic message. The novel nurses a lot of moral teachings that urge man to take care of nature and not to make it his enemy or mobilize it against himself. Through them, the novel makes the reader abhor taking revenge, admire natural forces and develop a strong desire to protect them.

The novel highlights adhering to wisdom and rationality by showing the good return of sticking to wisdom and rationality. Morgan says, "imprudence and taking revenge will never benefit anybody." This text summarizes the good result of adhering to wisdom and the events of the novel project the disastrous consequences of departing wisdom and rationality. If Jim had been sticking to the essence of the above saying of Morgan, he would have not experienced such a heavy toll upon himself and his men nor would have he turned himself into a representative

of the human flaw in dealing with nature around him. Jim's behavior indicates the fact that man is, extremely, cruel to nature and its treasures. His obsession with taking revenge hampered him from coming into contact with any kind of maturity or moral regeneration. It pushed him to his pathetic end.

The clear moral element which is provided by the story is that the revenging theme acted as a cautionary tale that makes the reader realize the danger of pursuing unfair revenge. The novel reflects the multidimensional consequences of taking revenge and its negative effects on the psychic balance of the human being. It warned human beings against being obsessed with taking revenge and depicted the toll that obsession with taking revenge can take on human health and life. It showed that obsession with taking revenge led to bad consequences and deprived families of their beloved ones.

One of the didactic aspects of the novel is the partial poetic justice that has been established at the end of the novel. The novel has shown a strong moral point of view by depicting a sense of justice through punishing the villains and rewarding some virtuous people; Morgan. The evil of Jim and Boxtel has been punished appropriately and the good of Morgan has been rewarded generously, but at the same time the novel told the reader that his heart may ache for the death of many innocent characters who became victims of the environment in which they were living and the evil which was created by the villainous characters. Many characters got involved in Jim's revenging

mission and died in the foolish pursuit of an unworthy cause; avenging the death of Sikes and taking revenge against a sea-creature that acts instinctively without knowing why it is being confronted by a war which is waged against it. However, the tragic aspects of the novel from which the reader derives moral teachings are that many innocent characters, like George, the Cooks, etc., were victims of the tragic end which the ship faced though they were essentially innocent people. Here, the reader realizes that evil-doing people may face the punishment they deserve, but at the cost of a heavy price which even the innocent people may pay. The moral teaching which the reader comes out with is that even if the forces of nature act on instincts that may unintentionally harm a human being, he should not react fatally against such instincts, avenge nature or fabricate a confrontation with it. Many captains avoided confronting Tylo Frip despite the damages they received from the presence of or a limited confrontation with it. The final chapter displays the quality of Morgan's wisdom and moral structure that contributed to save him from getting killed. It also reflects the moral regeneration which Rosa experienced as a result of the loss of her son and husband and her realization that her tongue was behind their death. All these aspects of the novel reflect its didactic dimensions and moral implications.

The novel warns the reader against getting hanged by lies because they are the mother of many evils. Lies are adopted at all aspects and levels of life to mislead people and carry out

personal whims. They are used to mobilize people and turn them into gears that serve the ulterior human motives. Jim tried to instigate men by claiming that Tylo Frip is a coward trade destroyer, but he was ploughing because many ships which passed-by him were taking trade to New York although their captains have relatives and sailors who have been killed by Tylo Frip. The novelist wanted to say that whales and other treasures of the sea and land act instinctively, nevertheless, they need protection against the destruction and recklessness which is exercised by some people. Nature is unconscious of the human exploitation of its treasures, it acts according to its own norms and instincts. While it is doing so, it may cause some human sufferings, unfortunately, human beings misunderstand nature, starts acting in a revenging manner and consequently they destroy themselves.

The novelist proved that revenge seekers will experience no peace in life, particularly, when it is directed against innocent nature because at the end, the damage that occurs to the avenger will be more harmful than the original action which was acted instinctively by the force of nature, but perceived by the human being as an aggression that gives rise to vengeance. Jim never enjoyed peace after he had decided to take revenge against Tylo Frip. His desire to take revenge against Tylo Frip was like biting a dog that had bitten him. It affected his mental and psychic stability, damaged his social relations, changed his fortune, made him oblivious of the looming threat and killed him and many

sailors. In other words, it made him experience the ferocious aspects of nature and, here, the reader discovers the didactic appeal of the novel.

A didactic aspect of the novel is that it dramatized the on-going conflict between those who exploit nature and those who want to protect it and gave a strong warning to human beings. It is dramatized in a creative and artistic manner to make the matter clearer and more memorable and the importance of protecting nature and its treasures more urgent. However, the novelist wanted to say that so long as those who consider the instinctive behavior of nature to be a destroyer of trade and business, the confrontation between man and nature will continue and both sides will face losses which result from that confrontation. In other words, nature also will be affected, negatively, from the confrontation, but the real loser will be the human beings themselves. Thus, the novel asks man to know the limits of his dealing with nature and act accordingly.

The novel has a strong moral tone specially in the course of projecting the conflict between man and nature. It acts as a moral argument in favor of conserving nature and stopping reckless human behavior that is destroying it. It reveals the moral dilemma which engaged Jim in unnecessary confrontation with nature; the source of his own existence and fortune. The novelist wanted to say that if man continues in perpetrating such a reckless behavior, he will annihilate himself and damage nature around him. In this regard, Morgan, Fagin and Sapt may

represent this moral voice which call for a reasonable dealing with nature without harming it or misbehaving with it. Therefore, they were against Jim's strategy of tit for tat. Fagin and Sapt represent what one of the sailors said, "Why do we want to kill it? ….It's just a type of dolphins and it is doing what whales usually do." This sailor expressed the exact philosophy which the novelist wanted to convey to the reader, to the world and to those who, unnecessarily, create a confrontation with nature. The novelist wanted to make the reader and the world reach easily to his message that aims to protect nature and its treasures against reckless behaviors of the exploitative industries.

Another moral tone springs from the novelist's sarcastic dealing with the superstitious, puritanical and racial tendencies of the society from which the main characters come. The novelist warns man against such tendencies. The search for Tylo Frip was based on its color and lines on the body, however, ironically enough they took a brown squid with lines on its body to be Tylo Frip. The social and industrial establishment avoid allowing black pagans to board hunting and whaling ships unless they display their usefulness and skills in the profession. The moral reference here is that it is not possible to identify a creature with only its color in order to determine its evilly or good nature, however, it is part of the human abnormality to be racial and identify people according to their colors and determine not only the scope of their participation in the course of the social and economic life of the society, but even their survival on earth! In

the process of boarding the fishing ship, the puritanical and superstitious minds of some fishermen were revealed, but their commercial and material inclinations were also exposed and criticized. Those who represented the ugly ideological structure of the society hesitated to allow idol worshippers to board the fishing and whaling ships, but ironically enough they were ready to accept them onboard if they were masters in the profession of hunting. It means that they thrust the non-senses of the interpolated religions and doctrines into every affair, but they are ready to sacrifice them and do away with them if they find commercial skills which would contribute to increase the profit of the industry. Riding the risk for the sake of profit appeared when Jim sent his young and inexperienced lad to the killer-whale and when sailors responded to the offer of gold-coins for killing the orca whale and even eating its meat! These references warn man against many evils which exist within and around him and ask man to get rid of them.

The exposition of the greedy and merciless nature of the fishing and whaling industry generates didactic significance. The events of the novel showed that those who are in charge of the fishing and whaling industry are merciless. Nobody lamented the death of Systen or Sheigo. The only thing which the fishermen had done was that they halted fishing activity on the day of the death of Sikes, throwed his body into the sea and returned to New York because he was the son of the commercial fisher and whale; Jim. Jim felt sorry for the death of Boxtel because he was a

source of revenging spirit for him, but he did not bother for the death of Systen or Sheigo though they died while they were helping Jim to kill Tylo Frip. If we combine this fact with allowing idol worshippers and even cannibals to board the ship because they are professional hunters, then the grim image about the fishing industry is fully established and becomes apparent. It indicates the fact that it is a fishing and whaling industry that bothers neither about human life nor does it bother about nature and its treasures. It reveals that there is no regard for religious or human values if there is a skill and professionalism that make the industry reap more profit. Such an attitudes gives the picture of the grim capitalism that recruits whoever it thinks that it can employ, exploit, suck his blood and throw him away at the end. In fact, the reader reaches to a conclusion that the novel gives a grim picture of the merciless profit-reaping industry of which the sole motive is to reap profit only and nothing else without any regard to the safety of the human beings or protection of nature and its treasures.

The didactic appeal of the novel is ingrained in the fact that it tells the reader that some people who are incapable of experiencing any moral regeneration whatever experience they may undergo during their life. The protagonist; Jim, did not undergo any moral transformation nor did he learn from his experience or professionalism. Therefore, he became an anti-hero though the theme rotates around him and his motive. Under the pressure of the tragic loss of his son, he lost everything and

lost his own life. His stubborn mind and rejection of any advice from those who were around him put him on the edge of being a villain and indeed he became a full-fledged villain; a murderer and a criminal. It seems that he was not only avenging his son's death, but he was also a suicidal man who was trying to mend up his own mistake of allowing his young and inexperienced son to confront a sea-beast, by engaging sailors in fatal confrontations to kill a sea-beast, but to no avail. He could neither change the course of battles in his favor by killing Tylo Frip nor could he return home safely. He remained stubborn up to the end and faced his tragic end whereas Rosa underwent a change and understood life and its norms in a better manner. By projecting Jim's character, the novel warned man against following his suit.

Though the novel has a sad ending, nevertheless, the reader gets thrilled because the didactic appeal of the novel is strong as a character like Morgan was still alive and Rosa withstood the tragedy of the loss of a husband, developed a repenting heart and experienced moral regeneration. The younger sons of Jim became his inheritors in the profession of fishing and whaling without nursing any revenging tendencies. Thus, the novel made its didactic and moral message clear and appealing to the reader.

Death, Violence and Horror in the Novel: 'The Legendary Whale'

Sea-journeys of fishing and whaling usually make the reader feel the seriousness of such journeys that are usually not without serious incidents. The novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is no exception. The novel is, generally, serious and its dominant atmosphere is of serious actions, violence, conflicts, battles, murdering, wrecking, drowning and deaths. The novelist created a violent and serious atmosphere and used texts and images that depict fierce confrontations and foreshadow a great suffering, distress, death and tragedy. The images of death and violence were also incarnated through quarrelling between Jim and Rosa, the body of Sikes when rescued and when thrown into the sea, the quarreling between Jim and Sapt, the quarrelling between Jim and Fagin, Darnay's dead body and the carcasses of the Tuna fish which stands for lurking death. They, all, foreshadow the approaching of a grim fate that surrounds Lingnerland and its sailors, narrow death-rings around them and drive them to their doom. It is the orca whale which was behind the major source of the dramatic actions in the novel which generate fear while Jim was behind the violent actions and gruesome crimes. Describing the dangerous nature of orca whales, Darnay says, "they become more dangerous than sharks…They can feast on everything even the biggest whales." Sike's jumping into the sea grips the reader with fear for the fate of the young lad. Fear continues as he has

not appeared on the surface of the sea. Anticipation increases as stains of blood appear on the surface of the sea. The reader experiences a sense of fear that runs through the veins of his blood. The mad jumping of Jim into the sea to rescue his son, the jumping of some sailors into the sea to support Jim and the final brining of Sikes' dead body onboard, all, are sources of a great chock that grips the nervous system of the reader and chills the blood in his veins. All were shocking and rather horrific scenes. The whale smashed Sikes' head and broke his jaw. It was sad that they found neither a coffin nor a place to bury him. They faced a single grim option in the form of throwing him into the sea and no other option was there to give Sikes a suitable funeral. Describing the fate of Sikes Morgan says to Rosa "his body began to decompose after three days of his death….We had no coffin to put him in, so we were not having another option, but to throw his body into the sea." It was a grim fate which Sikes faced. In the aftermath of Sikes' death, Rosa quarreled with Jim. The quarreling between them was serious and reached the level of violence and landed them in the police center.

The tales of the battles between Tylo Frip and the sailors of the passing-by ships were a source of a great grip over the nervous system of the reader. The details of fighting between Tylo Frip and the sailors of Lingnerland fill the reader with horror and a sense of inner fear that moves the reader's heart and blood. The reader feels a deep sense of shudder that runs through the veins of his blood when he comes to know that the body of

Darnay was still stuck and hanging between the ropes which Tylo Frip was dragging behind him. The event of cutting of Boxtel's body by Tylo Frip into two parts was a source of great horror. The event in which Jim fires a bullet in the head of Fagin reflects a gruesome crime in front of all sailors. It shocked them and the reader, as well. Death and the image of death were lurking everywhere and produce violence and horror. It has not spared even the tuna fish which were being caught and then thrown again into the sea. Projecting the carcass of the tuna in his own way, the narrator says, "The poor tuna turned into white bones and sank into the ocean." This reflects an atmosphere which was dominated by death and its solemnity.

At the end of the novel, the reader finds a spirit-sermon in which Jim comes in contact with the image of Fagin's face; his eyes which were gazing at Jim and his spirit which was haunting him up to the last moments of his life. It was a kind of a ghostly revenge in its own way and produces some elements of gothic stories. It fills the reader with fear. The suffering which Jim receives from coming in contact with Fagin's spirit adds to his suffering from suffocation in water and tearing of his body by Tylo Frip. The spirit of Fagin which haunted Jim, psychologically, exhausted him and continued to chase him up to the moment of his death. It became an additional factor which Jim has to confront along with his final confrontation with Tylo Frip. It became a source of horror and a message which says that killing innocent people will have a dire repercussion; if not legal,

it will arise from within; the natural justice, and become worse even than the legal prosecution.

The scene in which Morgan sits on just a small floating wood on the surface of the wide ocean fills the heart of the reader with awe, particularly, when the reader comes to know that not only the killer whale; Tylo Frip, was around, but also many sharks were roaming around Morgan and gazing at him to turn him into a meal. They were ready to tear him up and deprive Jim's family from even the opportunity of knowing what had happened to Jim. The narrator says, "Sharks were swimming everywhere around him. They smelled the blood of humans and Tylo Frip, but they can't even come near Tylo. They began to swim around the floating wood. They looked at Morgan with their wicked eyes." All this indicates that the novel has many details that produce horror and fear in the heart of the reader.

Generally, there are no much elements of humor in the novel, but some sense of humor may appear scattered here and there. A sense of humor in the novel manifests itself in narrator's comment such as "The orca ate half of the tuna's body. It left the other half to them." It arises also when the reader encounters those who are running after the gold coins and therefore every time and then they cheer, foolishly, "We will, we will". They become clowns who are easily manipulated at the cost of their own lives. A sense of humor also arises from the narrator's comment which goes, "The men lowered the boats and jumped onto them like monkeys." However, the novel is predominantly

serious and violent in its tone as it depicts many violent incidents and fatal confrontations with Tylo Frip. Thus, the novel maintained a serious tone and revealed the author's relentless criticism for those who kill innocent people or misbehave with nature.

The Opening and the Closing Chapters

Both, the first chapter of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' and its closing chapter are relevant to the general, setting, theme and topic of the novel although both of them present city background with its beach, port, inn and house, but their contents are closely related to sea-life as its characters are closely connected to sea-life through their topics of discussions, interests and concerns of sailors.

The first chapter projects a city-background with its beach, fish-market and inn in which sailors meet, thus, it makes the reader feel the presence of the sea which is, geographically near and the approaching of the day of starting a fishing and whaling journey. Thus, sea, fishing and whaling are present, right from the beginning, in the minds of all characters who were introduced in the first chapter. The inn is a place where, captains, sailors, fishermen and whale-hunters gather, discuss their affairs, plan their sea-journeys and recruit professional whalers. The first chapter introduces the main characters; Jim, Rosa, Sikes and Morgan. Their opening discussions were about fishing, whaling, selling the remaining stock of fish and whale's oil and arranging for a new fishing and whaling journey. Three of them; Jim, Rosa and Sikes, were part of the front of confronting the sea-beast; Tylo Frip. They lost either their lives or their dears in those confrontations while Morgan, who was introduced in the first

chapter of the novel, was the only survivor of those deadly confrontations and returned to the city. The early introduction of these characters is an introduction of two parallel fronts in the novel that influence the actions of novel till the final chapter which gives the conclusion of those actions. One of the fronts, as in the case of Jim, confronted a sea-beast and lost a lot and the other front objected to that confrontation and either survived till the end as in the case of Morgan or died as in the case of Fagin and Sapt. As a prelude to this confrontation with nature, Jim, in the first chapter, hesitated to take Sikes with him as the sea may suddenly become dangerous, but then he accepted and that acceptance caused the creation of actions that extended to the last chapter and crowned the last chapter with its consequences.

Thus, the first chapter nurses a world that foreshadows approaching sea-events. It points to the preparation for the proposed fishing and whaling journey to supply the market with fish and whale's oil. It introduces the main characters who will react to a coming fate in different ways and convert that reaction to events which foster the plot structure of the novel, develop the threads of narration and unfold the major theme of the novel in the following chapters. Sike's joining of the proposed fishing and whaling journey after some pondering from Jim is an indication of the joining of immaturity to a profession that needs professional and mature participants and companions because in the first chapter itself Jim and Morgan were thinking about inviting professional fishermen and whale hunters to join them

in their planned journey, but at the same time Jim decided to take a young and inexperienced son with him under the name of training him in the profession of his father. Thus, the first chapter develops anticipations in the reader and makes him think about the prospect of such a journey which decided to take an immature and inexperienced lad to the open sea with its hazards.

The last chapter presents Morgan's return to New York in another ship that rescued him. He returns alone and in between the departure and returning, the novel contains actions that made Morgan returns alone. It indicates the human cost of confronting nature or meddling with it. It symbolizes the return to those who want to survive and still work with nature in a mature, experienced, wise, rational and pragmatic manner. The last chapter finalized what has been planned and initiated in the first chapter, presented the desire of some custom officers to move warships to fight Tylo Frip and summed up the fact that although dealing with nature and confronting it cost a lot, still there are some human beings who are ready to repeat the same mistakes which have been committed by others and start a new confrontation with nature even if the battlefield is the northern pole. It reflects the nature of the vicious circle of the events and actions that took place between the first chapter and the last chapter. The customs officers expressed willingness to move warships and confront Tylo Frip as it destroys fishing and whaling industry. It indicates that the conflict between man and nature is perpetual and never ceasing. It is initiated as a result of

personal or mostly commercial purposes. In this reckless conflict, some will perish and some will survive and the conflict will go on, but still nature will stand triumphant and human beings; the perpetrators of the conflict, will suffer most. With its cause and effect, the confrontation acquires and existential dimension.

Neither the first chapter nor the last chapter is concerned with Tylo Frip, but they are very much related to the events of the whole novel which are created due to the confrontations with Tylo Frip. The first chapter initiates and stirs the anticipation of the reader about the title; 'The Legendary Whale', and the coming actions while the last chapter presents the final consequences of the conflict with 'The Legendary Whale'. The first chapter presents the arrangement for a sea-journey to fish and whale and the last chapter presents the consequences of that voyage which were disastrous as presented in the novel. The first chapter projects Rosa's suggestion to Jim to take Sikes with him to train him in his profession and the clothing chapter depicts Rosa's shock to what happened to Jim after she had already lost Sikes and her moral grow which she experienced as the result of the events of the novel. Thus, the first chapter gives a suitable and apt initiation of the novel and the last chapter offers suitable closing and end to the novel.

Significance, Aptness and Suitability of the Title: 'The Legendary Whale'

The titles of the novel: 'The Legendary Whale' is significant, apt and suitable and thus it served the purpose of the novel. It is a production of an artistic weaving of an imaginative structure of a mind that loved sea-life and became very much concerned about protecting its inmates. It stands for an imaginative sea-beast which was given the name 'Tylo Frip', within the novel, and out of admiration, the narrator called it, at the end of the novel, 'The Legendary Whale' and the novelist put it as an apt and suitable title of the novel because within the novel he depicted its phenomenal strength and exceptional cleverness and thus at the end of the novel he crowned that strength and cleverness with the apt descriptive phrase 'The Legendary Whale' that sums up its mighty and intelligent characteristics and makes the phrase deserves to be put as a title of the novel. Thus, the title of the novel, 'The Legendary Whale', refers the characteristic of a whale which fought human beings and defeated them. Indeed, the title is suitable to be 'The Legendary Whale' as the whale has a phenomenal power and intelligence that made it 'legendary' in all sense of the term and therefore the title became apt as it is coined to represent an exceptional power and intelligent fighting-performance that made the whale deserve the adjective 'legendary' as termed by the narrator in the last

lines of the novel and therefore 'The Legendary Whale' became an apt title for not only the novel, but also for its major theme: revenge.

The appearance of 'The Legendary Whale' is unique and its cleverness is unprecedented and matchless. It proved these qualities throughout the novel. It is an exceptional whale with distinct colors on its body. Taisam says, "It's the strongest and most intelligent whale in the world. Look! It's brown. It's different from the other orca whales. It's very dangerous if you confront it." It became famous among sailors and fishermen for its strength and intelligence. It has its own fighting strategies, trick and tactics that, successfully, defeated human strategies, trick and tactics. It killed Systen and Sikes in the first journey. In the second, journey, it destroyed Lingnerland and killed Jim and the rest of the crew except Morgan. It confronted also Hawkins' ship and made Hawkins' family pay a heavy price for that confrontation. It confronted Tom and made him return without any hunt. It came out from all battles victorious. The captains of the passing-by ships were aware of the dangerous nature of confronting Tylo Frip, therefore, they warned Jim against confronting it. The destruction of Lingnerland by 'The Legendary Whale', and the avoidance of other captains of the passing-by ships to confront it conveys a message that nature and its forces, as projected through 'The Legendary Whale', are unconquerable, unbeatable and undefeatable. The title is a reminder for human beings and call for them to realize this truth

and accept it wholeheartedly otherwise they will suffer from any confrontation with the powerful forces of nature.

The title points to what Jim was searching for in order to kill. It is an extraordinary, elusive and enigmatic brown orca whale that Jim was obsessed with killing so as to take revenge for the death of Sikes. The title is a descriptive adjective of a whale which has exceptional power and intelligence that do not only surpass those of other whales, but also cause the fall and defeat of its human adversaries and the achievement of a great victory over human recklessness. The descriptive adjective 'legendary' embodies its relevance to the thematic and symbolic bearing of the novel. The main theme of the novel is revenge. It sits on the cover page of the novel to rebuke the reckless attempt to take revenge against the whale. It makes the reader reflect upon the final consequences of that futile attempt which ended up in the final defeat of Jim and the victory of the legendary whale. Indeed, the events of the novel proved the whale's legendary characteristics. The descriptive phrase 'The Legendary Whale' refers to the power and cleverness of the whale that nullified human attempts to extinguish it, therefore, it deserved to be called 'The Legendary' whale. The significance, aptness and suitability of the title are justified by the phenomenal strength and cleverness of the whale, its legendary fighting skills and performance and its final 'clean' victory over Jim, his men and whoever confronted it. The strategies it adopted in confronting those who targeted it are unstoppable, undefeatable

and unconquerable. The Legendary Whale, successfully, exhausted and defeated the sailors of all ships to the extent that forced the port officials to dispatch warships in an attempt to confront it. The reader was not told about the result of the confrontation between the warships and the legendary whale. He was left to guess for himself. However, according to the results of the actual confrontations that took place in the novel, it will always remain legendary whatever weapon may the human beings use against it. In other words, when the reader takes the matter in its symbolic dimension that represents the confrontation between man and nature, he will reach to a conclusion that nature and its forces will always prevail because all of them proved their legendary qualities throughout history.

When it is put under the lens of critical examination and squeezing, the term, 'The Legendary' acquires a wider meaning which transcends the unreal name that is usually given to imaginative stories. Yes, this story also is the product of imagination, but the term 'The Legendary', here, has a broader and deeper meaning which transcends the imaginative meaning. The choice of the title emphasizes and summarizes the way the battle between a powerful force of nature and human beings has ended. This makes it acquire a symbolic significance and dimension. It represents the victory of natural forces over human beings. It stands for the forces of nature that can either tame man or destroy him. In this novel, 'The Legendary Whale' is a single orca-whale that fought many sailors of many ships and defeated

them despite the fact that those sailors were professional whale-hunters who possess all tools that are capable of killing whales. However, 'The Legendary Whale' tamed the captains of those ships, made Morgan attend practical performance of the power of natural forces, reformed Rosa, but it destroyed Systen, Sikes, Jim, Boxtel and many other characters even from other ships. This indicates that 'The Legendary Whale' was an exceptional whale with phenomenal power and cleverness that make it truly a 'Legendary Whale.' The choice of the title by the novelist is a call for man to realize that nature is stronger than him and he should take from it what he needs, but without antagonism, confrontation, damaging tendencies or interference with its affairs. Thus, the title of the novel fulfils the conditions of aptness and suitability. It serves also the purpose of the novel and its main theme. Its meaning can be unfolded, elaborated and philosophized into many themes that serve the idea of the author to attract human attention, call him to avoid confrontation with the forces of nature, urge him to protect them and advise him to act wisely with them.

The title 'The Legendary Whale' has thematic relevance. It serves the purpose of the major theme of the novel. On its turn, the theme of the novel fosters the title of the novel and makes it project its legendary significance and dimension. Without the campaign of revenge that has been launched by Jim, the reader would have not undergone the marvelous demonstration of power of 'The Legendary Whale'. The content of the novel deals

with the confrontation between 'The Legendary Whale' and revenge-rider; Jim. The major theme enabled the title to have its thematic bearing and the title 'The Legendary Whale' proved the ability of the whale to confront reckless attempts to take revenge undertaken by Jim. This mutual incarnation of each other; the theme and the title of the novel, revealed the novelist's artistic caliber that linked the title to the content of the novel and vice versa. It also depicted his love and admiration for nature and made him an activist, in his own artistic way, who wants to protect nature even by, literally, mobilizing its own forces to undertake the task of protecting itself. Therefore, in his drive to protect nature, the only way for the novelist was to create a legendary representative of his vision of protecting nature. He created 'The Legendary Whale', qualified it with legendary strength and intelligence, devoted it to undertake that formidable task and made it confront reckless human aggressions against the nature. The course of the confrontation takes place as the legendary whale was acting instinctively and eating what has been caught by fishermen of different ships and one of those ships was Lingnerland. Sailors of Lingnerland became angry and wanted to confront the intruding whale. Systen tried to spear it, but he fell into the sea and got killed by it. Sikes insisted on confronting it and jumped to the sea, but the whale killed him. The fire for taking revenge was ignited in the heart of Jim, but the motive of taking revenge was directed against a legendary sea-beast; 'The Legendary Whale', which was exceptional in its

cleverness and strength. It was triumphant in all battles and confrontations with human beings. It became legendary as the events of the novel proves it to be so. It used those two characteristics; namely, strength and intelligence, effectively and fought bravely till it came out triumphant over Jim, therefore, it became an unforgettable whale which every reader who reads the novel will continue to remember it, specially, those readers who read the novel and get a chance to travel by sea or have a sea-journey. Thus, the theme of revenge proves the aptness of the title, its significance and suitability and supports it as it depicted the legendary power of the whale and showed that it can't be defeated. In other words, the critical examination of the title and its thematic relevance prove that the spirit of the title is incarnated through the events of the novel and therefore it is apt, suitable and suggestive. The major theme of the novel is about taking revenge that targeted a sea-beast which was possessing a legendary physical power and intelligence that made it come out victorious in each and every battle it fought against Jim and his crew or the captains of other passing-by ships. Even if it, sometimes, withdraws, it does this tactically to prepare itself for another assault or self-defense. Both, Jim and 'The Legendary Whale', used the weapons and the talents they possess, but at the end, the whale defeated Jim, killed him and his crew and became 'Legendary'. It neutralized the professional skills and power of sailors of many ships in general and Lingnerland in particular. The theme of revenge has been crowned by the final victory of

'The Legendary Whale' and the death of its adversaries. It nullified all their plans and defeated them in all confrontations. Its legendary power made the captains of many ships realize that it is of no use to confront Tylo Frip and whoever failed to realize this truth paid a heavy price. Whoever confronted that legendary whale, either suffered a heavy loss as in the case of Hawkins or became a direct victim of the whale as in the case of Jim. The power and intelligence of Tylo Frip were in fact legendary and made all the plans against it fail. All the events and actions in the novel proved the true nature of the legendary characteristics, strength and cleverness of the whale that defeated all its adversaries.

The title of the novel indicates that just a single force of nature can turn the life of human beings into a bundle of problems and complications. The term 'legendary' is a highlighting phrase through which the novelist wanted to raise the attention of human beings that what they are doing with the nature is wrong and nature will definitely react in a fatal manner that will not only trouble the life of human beings, but also threaten their existence. He wanted to say that nature will react to human recklessness in a legendary and unprecedented manner that human being will never be able to confront or bear. The title indicated that nature has its own weapons and when these weapons are unsheathed and used, no power can withstand or confront nature. In other words, when nature reacts and uses its

legendary weapons, it is the human being who will pay a heavy price and bear the disastrous repercussions.

Examining the description of the whale by the narrator at the last lines of the novel as 'The Legendary Whale' shows that the novelist has a special admiration to the whale. In fact, though it is a non-human character, but it is the actual a hero in the novel. The novelist made a non-human figure a hero of the novel as it represents the novelist's point of view of how nature will react and treat human beings if they become reckless. It seems that novelist wanted to say that no law; whether local or international, is capable of disciplining human beings and making them act rationally with nature except the laws of nature itself. Only the forces of nature are capable of disciplining human beings and returning them to their sense and whoever confronts nature will face what he deserves. After experiencing nature's pay-back, the world is now trying to revise its economic and environmental policies in order to avoid further rage of nature. Hence, no other title was more suitable with this novel which depicts the philosophy of the novelist and his attitudes towards nature than the title 'The Legendary Whale'. No character's name in the novel was suitable to be put as a title or even represent the theme of the novel except 'The Legendary Whale'. Even it is more suitable than the much-used name of the whale in the novel; ''Tylo Frip. If the reader is given a choice between choosing 'The Legendary Whale' or 'Tylo Frip' as a title for the novel, he will go for 'The Legendary Whale' as it highlights the resl qualities

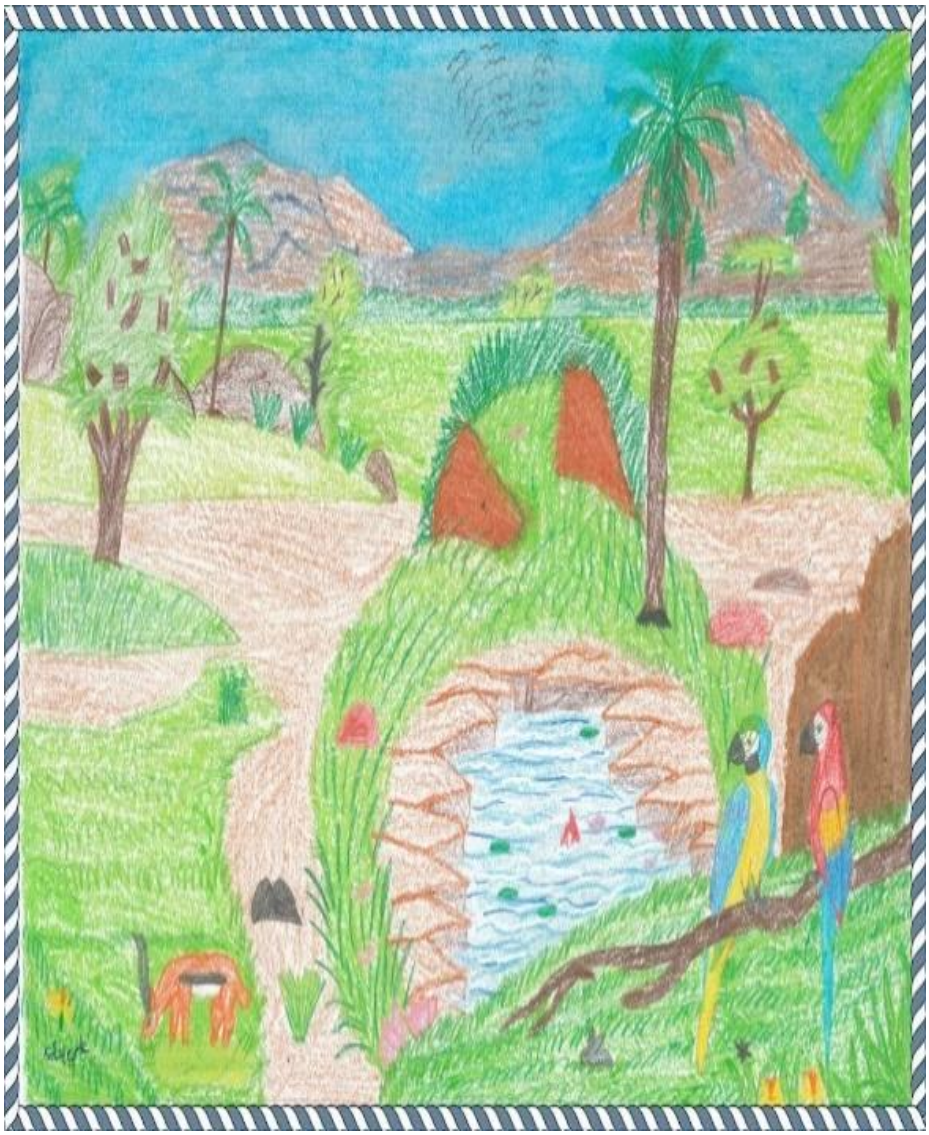
of the whale and what the novelist wants from nature; producing a hero from its own forces to discipline man and protect itself and therefore a descriptive phrase like 'The Legendary Whale' is better than the crud name of the whale itself; 'Tylo Frip'. 'The Legendary Whale' continued to be victorious to the extent that the official authorities of the port decided to move warships to confront it and the reader is left without any final result about what will happen. This confirms the legendary nature of The Legendary Whale and indicates the aptness of the title.

As 'The Legendary Whale' can be treated as the mouthpiece of the novelist and a major literary symbol of the sea-beasts, it delineates the philosophy of the novelist who wanted the whale to be exceptional and phenomenal in its strength and intelligence in order to defeat human recklessness. He wanted it to be a universal symbol of a nature's creature which restores order and norm in nature, stops human beings to their boundaries and draws red lines so that human beings may not cross them. The symbolic implications of the title give the whale a human characteristic and personality and make it transcend the level of remaining as just a sea-animal. The title makes the whale a key figure in its own right. Although in the course of the novel, it was considered by its adversaries like Jim and others to be 'stupid', 'dangerous', 'trade destroyer', etc., it was not so in the philosophical vision of the novelist. The terms 'stupid', 'dangerous', 'trade destroyer', etc., were coined by those who have materialistic mentality and want to carry on their business

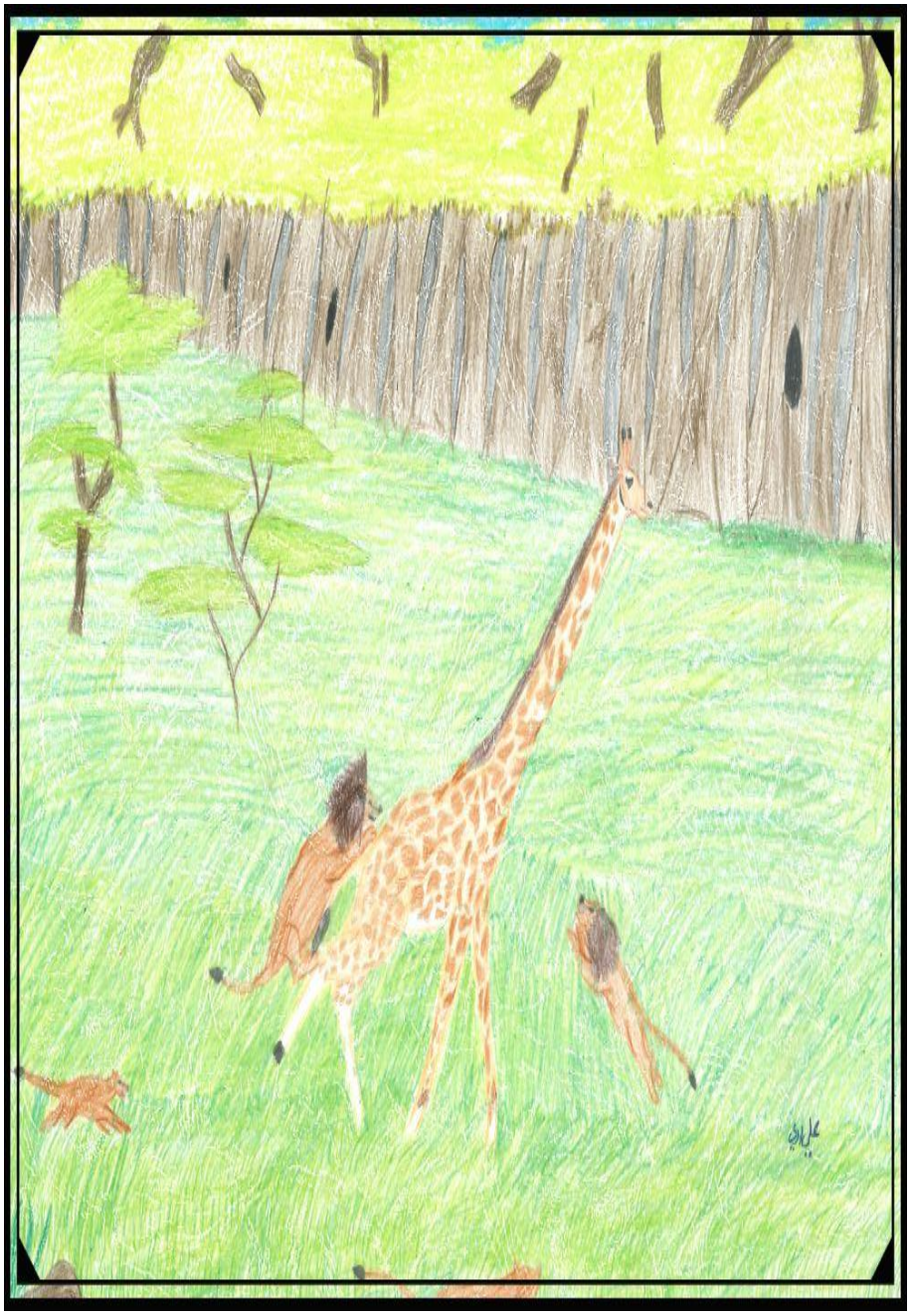
at all costs without any consideration to the privacy and instincts of nature therefore, those terms reigned in the minds of the adversaries of nature and not favored by the novelist himself that is why at the end of the novel the novelist engineered the victory of the whale against man, made the narrator utter the descriptive phrase; 'The Legendary Whale' and selected it as a title of the novel. It represented the spirit of the novelist's philosophy, therefore, the title is significant, apt and suitable in every sense of the term.

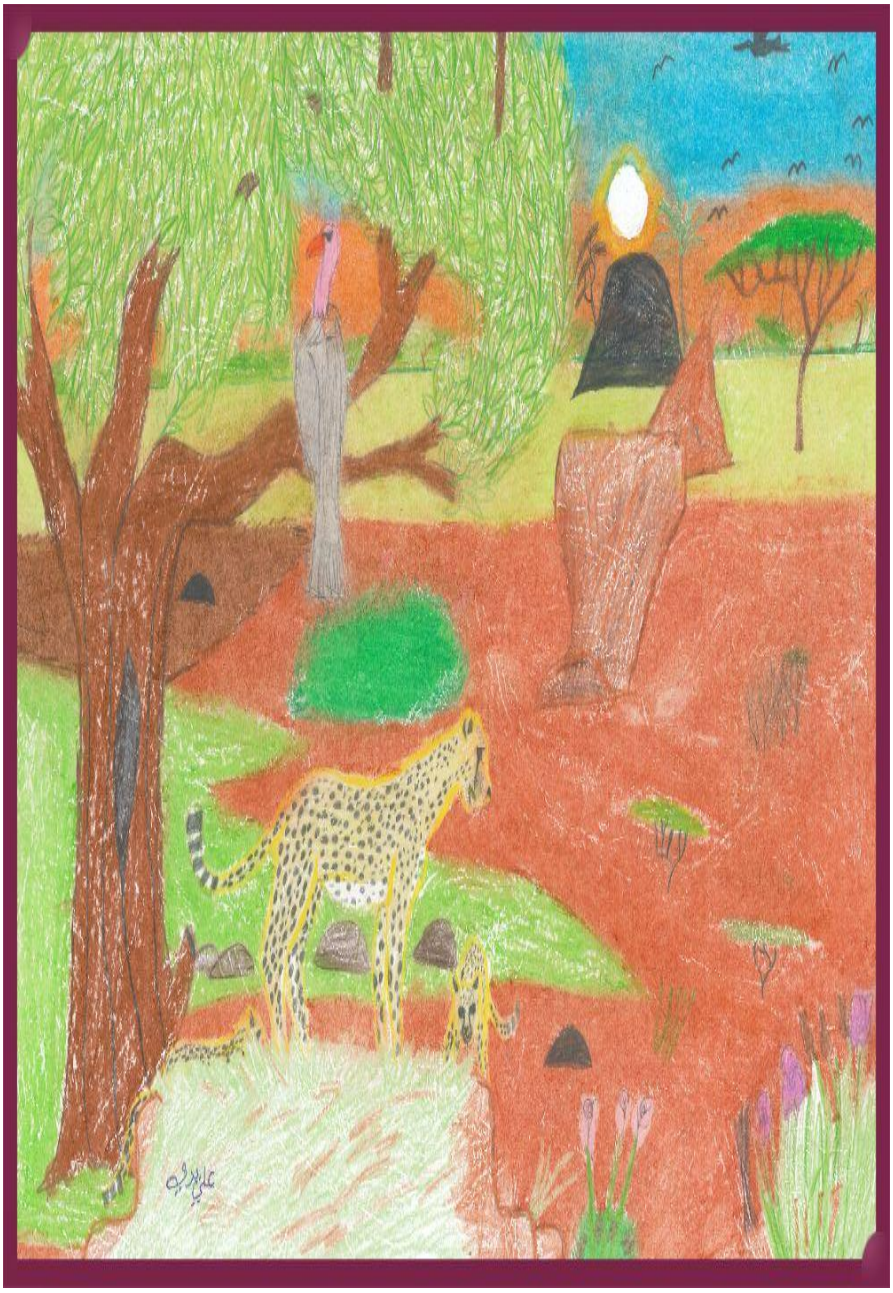
Index

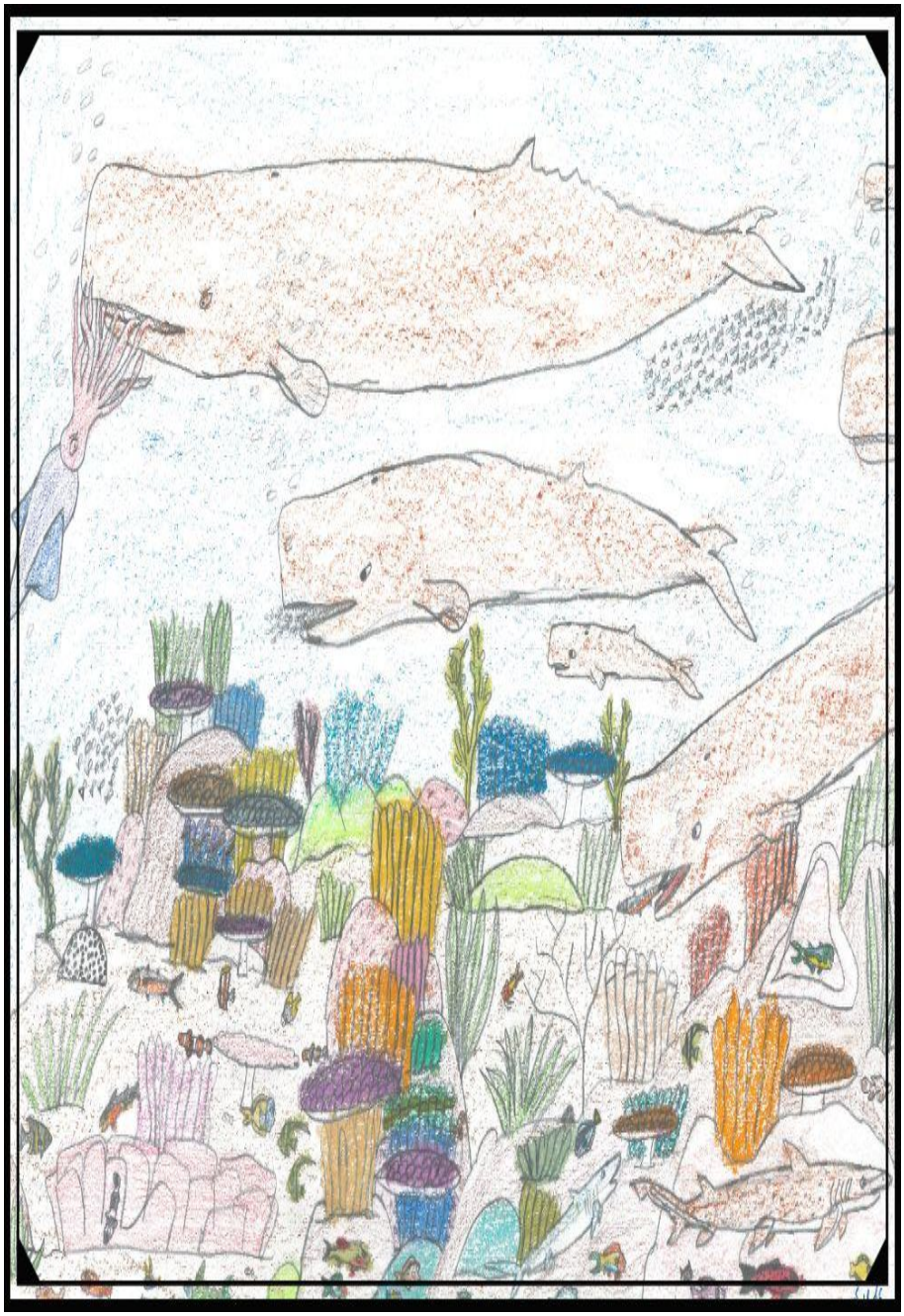
Specimens of Ali's childhood Artistic Inclinations



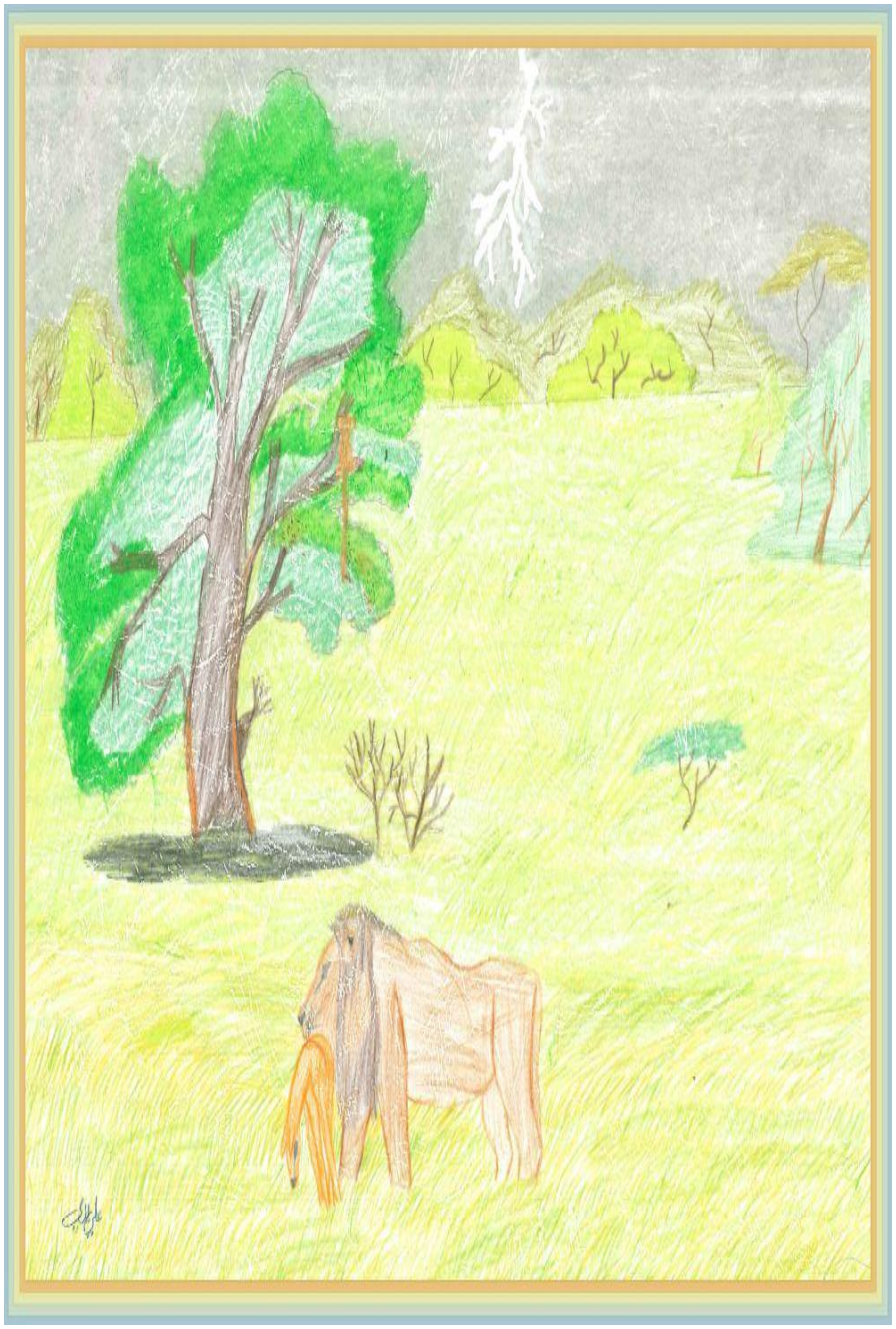


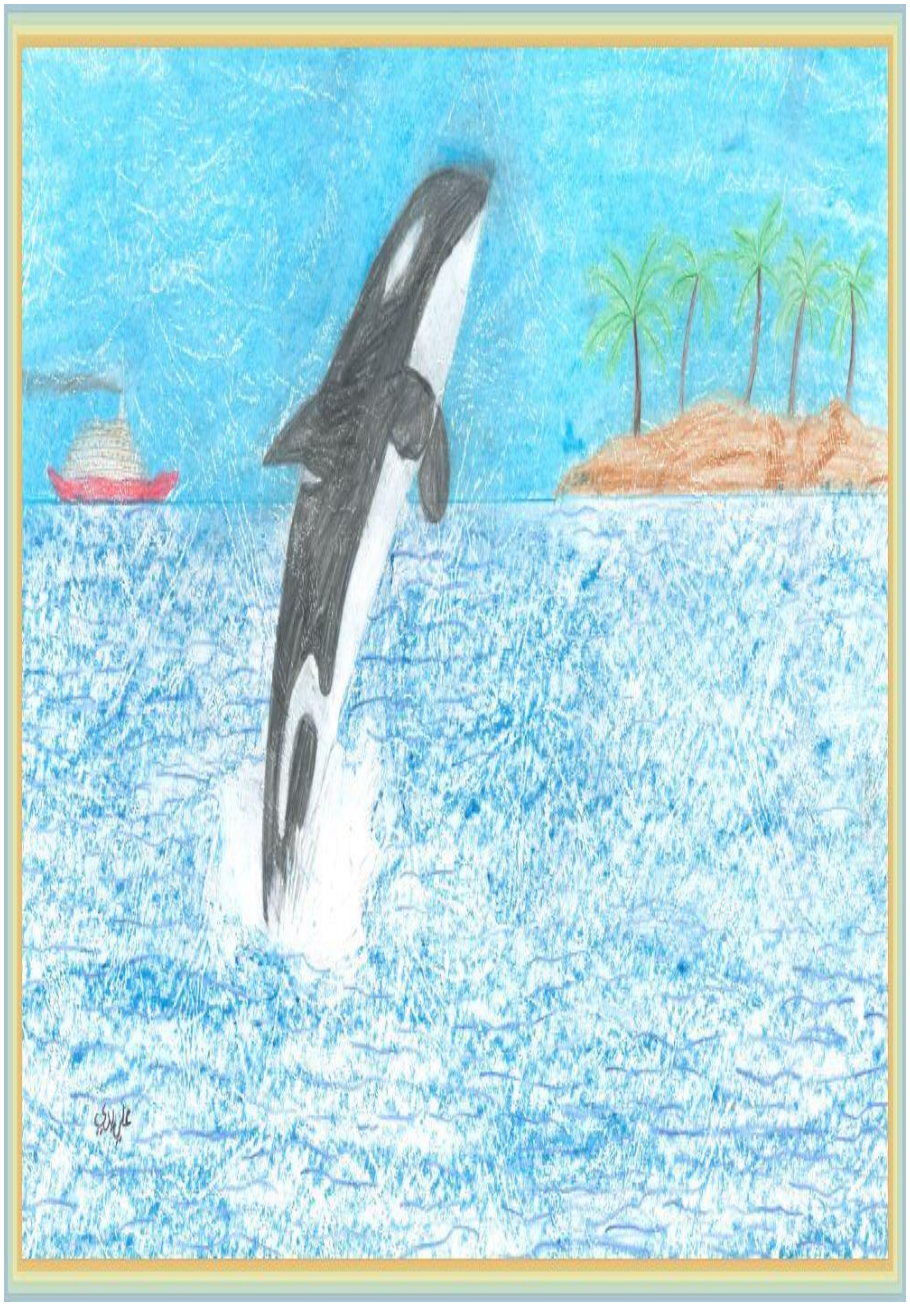


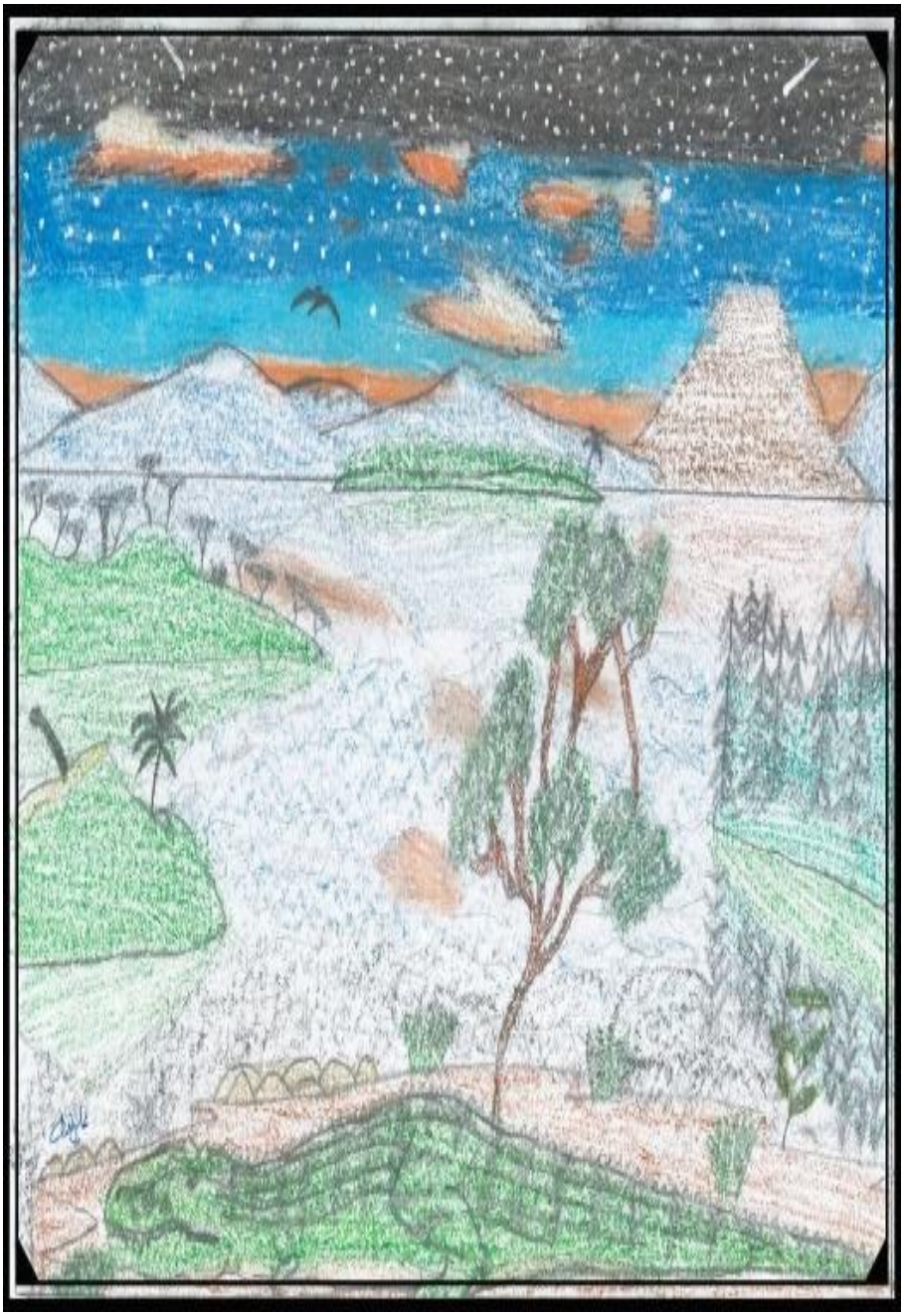


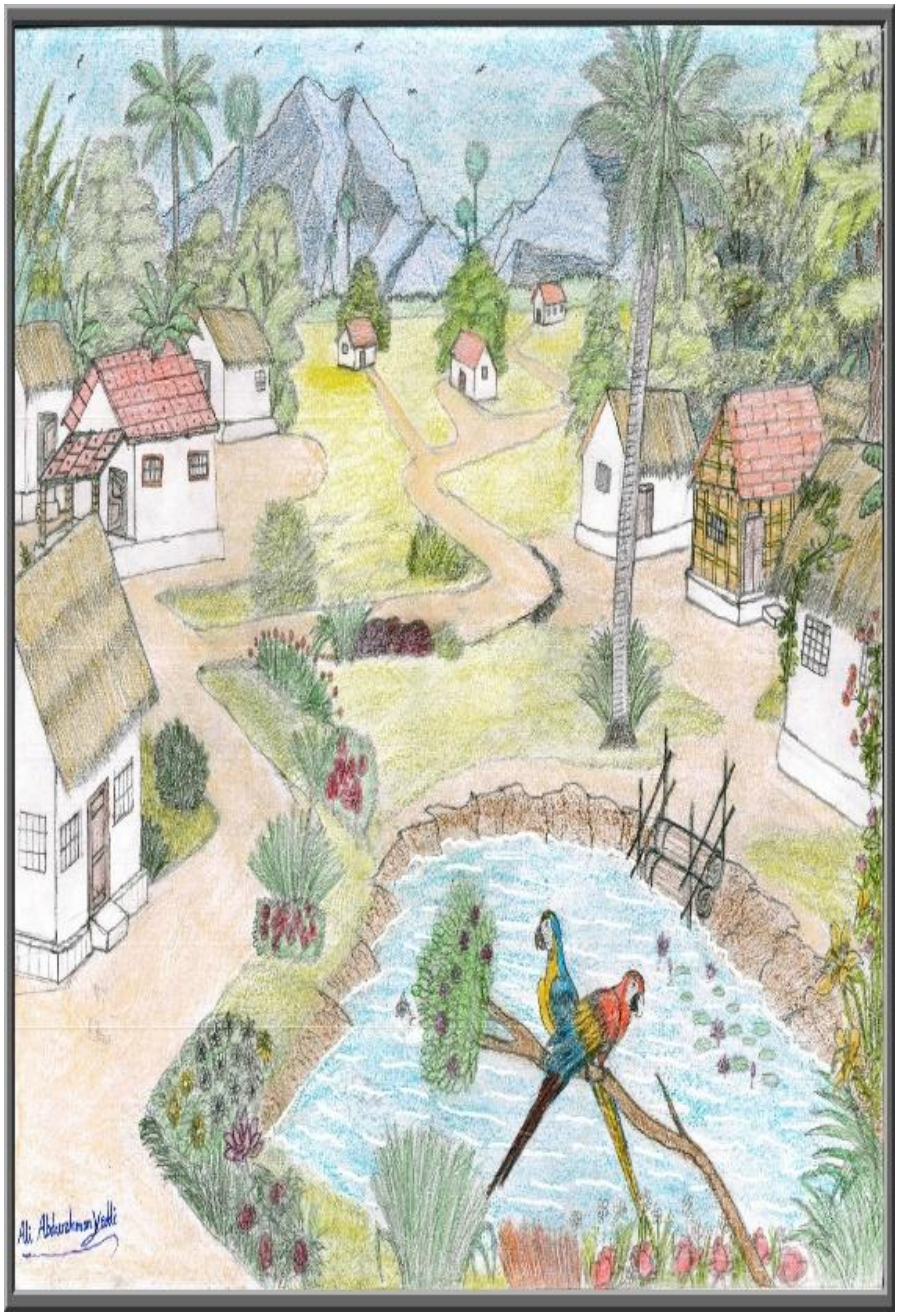











Ali. Abdurahman Yeddi


Ali Yeddi (Sudanese)



About the Author:

Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor is a prominent writer, academician and critic. He was born in Elgolid district; North Sudan on 1st. of June 1964. He got his early education in Khalwa; a form of Islamic education, then, he completed the primary and intermediate schools in Elgolid itself. Then, he completed the secondary school in Khartoum. Then, he joined Omdurman Islamic University in 1986. His aim was to study English language and literature, but against his will, he had been admitted in History Dept., therefore, after completing the first year in that Dept., he departed to India to study English language and literature. He completed the Bachelor of Arts; (English as a major paper), in 1990 from Pune University. Then, he completed Master of Arts; (English Literature as a major paper), in 1993 from Pune University. Then, he completed Ph.D. of English; (ELT), from BAMU in Aurangabad in 1997.

Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor worked in the field of translation in the Persian Gulf. He has climbed the job grades till he became Translation Expert. Moreover, after his return to Sudan, he worked as Associate Professor in the College of Languages and Translation in Sudan University of Science and Technology till he was dismissed because he wrote and published an article title: “Marketing Academic Degrees in Sudanese Universities: A Testimony for Allah” which exposed the crooked academic ways of the corrupt stakeholders.

After a prolonged and deep reading, studying and researching in the references and books of those who call themselves Sunnis, he shifted from the so-called Sunna Creed, to Shiism; allegiance to the Progeny PBU them; the

true followers of Quran and the Sunna of the Prophet PBUH and his progeny. He has many written works which explain various aspects of this shift and no Mullah could respond, scientifically, to what he has written in this regard.

He is a proficient writer, deep-sighted academician and sarcastic as well as stinging critic. He has written many books and articles. Some of them are in English and some of them are in Arabic. They cover aspects such as education, ELT, literary criticism, history, religion, politics, short stories and other intellectual issues. Many of them are available in the libraries of more than 160 universities all over the world and also in many international national libraries such as Congress Library in the US and Russian National Library. They are also available online on many websites include the author's own website: https://yeddibooks.com. The following are lists which include some of his works:

Books:

1. Tayeb Salih's Season of Migration to the North: An Ideo-Literary Evaluation, (English Version)
2. Tayeb Salih's Season of Migration to the North: An Ideo-Literary Evaluation, (Arabic Version)
3. Sudanese Educational Issues: An Ideological Perspective. (In English)
4. History of English Language in Sudan: A Critical Re-reading. (In English)
5. Teaching English in Sudan: A Practical Approach. (In English)
6. The New Muslim's Book of the Fundamentals of Islam: Their Significance. (In English)
7. Intellectual scientific and academic miscellany. (English/Arabic)
8. Basics of English Grammar for Sudanese Students
9. Grammar of English: Explanation, Rule and Drills
10. History of Educational Experiments in Sudan: A Brief Account. (In English)
11. Value-based Stories. (In Arabic)
12. From Darkness of Saqeefa's Astray to the Guidance Light of the Ship. (Arabic Version)
13. From Darkness of Saqeefa's Astray to the Guidance Light of the

Ship. (English Version)

14. The Reign of the So-called Islamists: The Reign of the Harmful Catastrophe. (In Arabic)
15. Language Teaching: From Method to Post-method: A Sourcebook. (In English)
16. Mahmood Mohammed Taha: A Contemporary Falta (Sudden Recklessness) from Saqeefa Falta. (In Arabic)
17. Hasan Abdullah Al Turabi: Hashawi and Salafi Understanding and Holami Compositions. (In Arabic)
18. O Sudanese! Know Your True Enemy: Other Articles (In Arabic)
19. Curriculums in Sudan and the Strategy of Misleading the Young People. (In Arabic)
20. No Stoning for an Adulterous and No Capital Punishment for an Apostate. (In Arabic)
21. English as an International Language: Skills to be Given Priority in FLT Situation. (In English)
22. Disgrace in Departments of English and Colleges of Education in Sudanese Universities: With Special Reference to SUST and Alneelain Universities. (In English)
23. A Critical Sail into Ali A. M. Yeddi's Novel: The Legendary Whale. (In English)
24. Mohammed Sayyed Haj: A Story-Teller, Croaks with Distortion, Hides Truth and Ruminates Lie and Falsification. (In Arabic)
25. A Critical Literary Glance into Ali A. M. Yeddi's Novel: A Racial Madness against Innocence. (In English)

Articles:

1. "Aims of Education in Sudan: An Ideological Overview", in, 'Educational Insight', Quarterly, Vol. 1, No. 2, Dec. 1997. (In English)
2. "Sudan: A Model of Real Independence", in, Radiance Viewsweekly, 15-21 Feb., 1998. (In English)
3. "Mother Tongue as Medium", in, Radiance Viewsweekly, 11-17 April, 1999. (In English)
4. "Foreign Transmission and the Allegiance of Human Intellect", in Radiance Viewsweekly, 3-9 Jan., 1999. (In English)
5. "Language Policy in Sudan", in, RELC Journal, Vol. 32, No. 2, Dec. 2001. (In English)

6. A Story of Confrontation between the Artistic Classifications Dept. and Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi, Al Rakoba Website. (In Arabic)
7. Marketing the Scientific Degrees in Sudanese Universities: A Testimony for Allah, Al Rakoba Website. (In Arabic)
8. Basic School Books are Full of Lies, False and Misleading: Oh Parents, Pay Attention! (In Arabic)
9. The Aftermath of the Fall: Pseudo-Islamist Brothers is a Zio-American Organization, Al Rakoba, 10th. October, 2020. (In Arabic)
10. The Sora of Frowned and the Frowner is Othman. (In Arabic)
11. O, who Parys Taraweeh- Are you a Donkey? (Arabic/English)
12. "Then Complete Fasting until the Night" The Night and not Moqrib is the Legal Time for Iftar. (Arabic/English)
13. Ablution is Two Washing and Two Rubbing. (In Arabic)
14. '9-TheLong' The Thieves are in the Palace Since 1956. (In Arabic)
15. The Tempest About the Renaissance Dam and the Pharaonic Agenda behind It. (In Arabic)
16. The Falsehood of A'shora Fasting and Distracting Mules from Truth. (In Arabic)
17. How Do We Not Be Racial and We….? (In Arabic)
18. How Do We Not Kill Each Other and Rob Each Other While We are Loyal to Criminals and Pray for Them? (In Arabic)

Please send your feedback and correspondences to the author through the e-mail: dryeddi12@gmail.com

Or WhatsApp: 0097455093898

Website: https://yeddibooks.com

Some of the Works of Dr. Abdelrahman Yeddi

